## TABLE OF CONTENTS

**NATIONAL GOVERNMENT DOCUMENTS** ............................................................. 5

**GAUTENG PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT DOCUMENTS** ........................................... 46

**CITY OF TSHWANE METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY** .................................................. 73

**EKURHULENI METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY DOCUMENTS** ...................................... 83

**SEDIBENG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY** ......................................................................... 106

**LESEDI LOCAL MUNICIPALITY** .................................................................................. 114

**MIDVAAL LOCAL MUNICIPALITY** ................................................................................ 124

**WESTRAND DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY** ....................................................................... 135

**MERAFONG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY** .......................................................................... 140

**MOGALE CITY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY** ..................................................................... 144

**RANDFONTEIN LOCAL MUNICIPALITY** .................................................................... 152

---

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 1: Comprehensive Rural Development Programme .................................................. 5
Table 2: Expanded Public Works Programme, Five-Year Report ........................................ 6
Table 3: Horizon 2010 ........................................................................................................ 7
Table 4: Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) Policies ............................................... 8
Table 5: Integrated Growth And Development Plan DAFF ............................................... 10
Table 6: Industrial Policy Action Plan 2013/14 – 2015/16 (IPAP 5) ........................................ 10
Table 7: Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF 2009 - 2014) ........................................ 10
Table 8: National Budget 2013 (People’s Guide), Estimates Of National Expenditure 2013 (Abridged Version) ........................................................................................................ 12
Table 9: National Development Plan 2030 – Our Future Make It Work ................................ 13
Table 10: ASGISA (Accelerated And Shared Growth Initiative For South Africa) Annual Report, 2007 ................................................................. 14
Table 11: National Infrastructure Plan – Strategic Integrated Projects ............................... 15
Table 12: Robust And Inclusive Municipal Economies: Policy Guidelines For Implementing Local Economic Development In South Africa, 2005 (Department Of Cooperative Governance) And The National Framework For Local Economic Development In South Africa (2006 – 2011) ................................................................. 16
Table 13: New Growth Path Framework ............................................................................. 17
Table 14: National Industrial Policy Framework (Nidp) And Industrial Policy Action Plan 2 (IPAP2) ............................................................ 18
Table 15: Programme Of Action (POA) ............................................................................. 19
Table 16: National Rural Tourism Strategy ....................................................................... 20
Table 17: Rural Transport Strategy For South Africa ......................................................... 21
Table 18: SANRAL Annual Report .................................................................................... 22
Table 19: Second Economy Strategy Project, Review Of Second Economy Programmes, January 2008 ........................................................................................................... 23
Table 20: South Africa Geared For Growth 2011 ................................................................. 24
Table 21: National Spatial Development Perspectives (NSDP) ........................................... 24
Table 22: STRATEGIC Plan For The Department Of Agriculture, Forestry And Fisheries 2012/13-2016/17 ................................................................. 25
Table 23: Strategic Plan Of The Department Of Public Works .......................................... 26
Table 24: National Strategy For Sustainable Development And Action Plan ..................... 27
Table 25: Legal And Policy Inputs to Other Templates ....................................................... 28
Table 26: A Summary of National Government Documents ............................................. 44
As mentioned above, the CRDP distinguishes itself as being premised on a “proactive participatory community-base planning approach rather than an interventionist approach to rural development”.

The CRDP recognises rural areas as potentially vibrant environments with development potential. The project (GRDLRPs) shares this sentiment and endeavours to unlock the economic opportunities that lie in the unique attributes of each individual CRDP node.

As mentioned above, the CRDP distinguishes itself as being premised on a “proactive participatory community-base planning approach rather than an interventionist approach to rural development”. It is
important that the mindset and approach to rural development should be people-centred as opposed to a top-down and interventionist approach (also refer to the Integrated Growth and Development Plan of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries and the National Development Plan). In accordance with this view the community should therefore become a development partner in the Gauteng Rural Development and Land Reform Plans.

- Despite the fact that urban agriculture is supported by a number of government departments, there is no strategy, policy or guideline document that guides urban and peri-urban agriculture. It is pivotal to define the role of agriculture in the economy of Gauteng in order to improve rural (and peri-urban) livelihoods. The Gauteng province can therefore potentially benefit by tapping into the programme and learn from the implementation of the pilot projects—both from successes and from failures.

- In the preparation of the GRDLRPs three categories for rural land development were defined. The third category “Rural Economic Activities and Related Settlement” refers to “land on which a diverse range of economic activities based on (1) the unique rural attributes/qualities of the land, (2) nearby farming activities, and (3) proximity to towns and larger urban areas for markets and customers (tourists), takes place”. The category includes activities such as tourism and factories in which beneficiation of agricultural products takes place. A wide range of national policy documents and strategy programmes refer to the development of agro-processing industries as a potentially major employment creator. The CRDP also promotes the development of agro-industries to stimulate economic development in rural areas. Agro-processing industries should ideally be located in this land category. This could possibly be done in partnership with the Industrial Development Corporation, Department of Trade and Industry and the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform. Future possibilities and development opportunities in this particular industry should be explored.

---

### Table 2: Expanded Public Works Programme, Five-Year Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The Expanded Public Works Programme was officially launched by former President Thabo Mbeki on 18 May 2004. The Gauteng Expanded Public Works Programme was launched by President Jacob Zuma on 31 August 2004.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) seeks to build skills, provide work-place experience, reduce unemployment and increase the capacity of the participants to earn an income, by increasing employment in four sectors through expansions in the labour-intensity of government funded infrastructure programmes. These sectors are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o <strong>Infrastructure</strong>: Increasing the labour-intensive construction, rehabilitation and maintenance of public infrastructure projects such as low volume roads, sidewalks, storm-water management, trenching, materials supply, etc.;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o <strong>Environmental</strong>: Creating work opportunities in public environmental, agriculture and arts programs, such as ‘Working for water’ (alien plant removal), ‘Working for wetlands’, ‘Working for coast’, tourism, Domestic waste collection and Agri-business initiatives;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o <strong>Social</strong>: Creating work opportunities through the public sector social programs of ‘Early Childhood Development’, ‘Home Based Care’, etc.; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o <strong>Economic</strong>: Assisting in the development of small businesses and cooperatives utilizing government expenditure on goods and services such as catering, security, uniforms, cleaning, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• While the target that was set for the EPWP in all sectors was a million jobs in five years, the infrastructure sector is seen as the area that has the largest employment generating potential, with a target of at least 900 000 work opportunities having been set. In each of the sectors, it is anticipated that labour-intensive projects will be initiated by National Departments, Provinces and Municipalities. No special budget exists for the EPWP, but is expected of each state actor to allocate a slice of its budget to the various sectors listed above with labour-intensive and small-scale activities in mind. Through preferential procurement and clever programming it is anticipated that the cumulative effect for a local economy of government budgets can be maximised. It is argued by the Department of Public Works that the success of the programme will depend upon substantial training and capacity building within the sector. Interventions have been put in place as part of this sector plan to address training and capacity building needs.

### IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

---

**GAUTENG RURAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN**
Principle/Policy

• The Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme forms part of the Expanded Public Works Programme. The aim of the programme is to:
  o Provide support to targeted land reform beneficiaries,
  o Support to producers who have acquired land through private means (i.e. engaged in value adding enterprises domestically or export activities).

• The programme is expected to produce the following outcomes:
  o Increased creation of wealth in agricultural and rural areas;
  o Increased sustainable employment;
  o Increased income and foreign exchange earnings;
  o Reduced poverty and inequalities in land and enterprise ownership;
  o Improved farming efficiency;
  o Improved national and household food security;
  o Stable and safe rural communities, reduced levels of crime and violence, and sustainable development;
  o Improved investor confidence, leading to increased domestic and foreign investment; and
  o Pride and dignity in agriculture as an occupation and sector.

• This programme created a total of 15 220 work opportunities from the second year since the inception of the EPWP until the 2008/09 financial year.

Proposals

• The document makes no specific proposals relevant to the project.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Summary: Proposed action/project response

• The project takes note of the programmes and can potentially be included in the Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme in future.

Table 3: Horizon 2010

| YEAR AND STATUS |
|-----------------
| Strategic Vision of SANRAL, released in 2010. |

Description of Document

• Against the backdrop of the Government’s commitment to transform the Public Sector, SANRAL is focused on providing the highest level of services at the lowest level of cost. The Horizon 2010 plan reflects the strategic vision for the South African Roads Agency Limited (SANRAL). One of the key strategic challenges facing SANRAL is the coordination of the rural infrastructure strategy.

Implications for Land Suitability Analysis

Principle/Policy

• SANRAL recognises the fact that infrastructure is a “necessary condition for sustainable development and economic growth”. In this context, SANRAL identified the need for transport development in the historically disadvantaged urban townships, peri-urban residential areas and rural areas.
• The development of road infrastructure in rural areas can potentially diversify the rural economy, increase agricultural production and reduce the economic costs of rural life (p. 39).
• SANRAL manages a number of poverty relief projects, mainly located in the Eastern and Western Cape. The purpose of the projects is to address the backlog of infrastructure in rural communities. During the year 2001/2002 an amount of R 94 million was allocated to SANRAL for this purpose (p. 39).

Proposals

• The document has no spatial component, but reiterates the importance of rural infrastructure in the economic growth of rural communities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Summary: Proposed action/project response
• Rural Infrastructure development (specifically transport infrastructure) is a necessary prerequisite for rural economic development and should form part of as a core strategic intervention of the project. One of the predetermined “desirable criteria” for all three land development categories is the proximity to transport routes viz. “On or close to transport routes to enable access to job opportunities”, and “Served by taxi, bus and/or rail services”.

• The current status of the poverty relief projects as managed by SANRAL is unknown. There is a possibility to approach SANRAL to enquire about the status and the possibility to include the Gauteng Rural Development and Land Reform Plans as part of the project.

Table 4: Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) Policies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Not applicable – the policies are on-going.</td>
<td></td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

• The Industrial Development Corporation plays an important role in growing the South African economy and creating employment opportunities. The IDC provides financial support to start-up businesses. The IDC is investing R 10 billion over the next five years through its Gro-E Scheme. The IDC also provides funding for the Agricultural Value Chain (including Agro-processing) and tourism.

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

• The consumer market (in the form of large supermarket groups) is dictating the agricultural value chain. The IDC states that the current market demand is forcing farmers to maximise scale which threatens small-scale farming. The small scale farmer requires access to markets, skills and finance to survive. The IDC therefore suggest that Agro-processing is able to assist small-scale farmers to become commercially successful. Agro-industries should preferably be linked to “resource-poor small-scale farmers to maximise its potential impact on rural South Africa” and incentives should be developed to “bring agro-processors into the push to commercialise small-scale farmers”. Incentives should specifically focus on “pro-poor and pro-rural agro-industrialisation”. The Industrial Development Corporation’s R100-million Agro-Processing Linkage Scheme (APL) incentivises agro-processors to source raw material directly from resource-poor farmers. This creates direct linkages between agro-processors and resource-poor farmers through mechanisms such as contract farming.

Proposals

• The document makes no specific proposals relevant to the project.

Table 5: Integrated Growth And Development Plan DAFF

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries released and adopted the Integrated Growth and Development Plan in October 2012.</td>
<td></td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

• The document outlines the key areas of development for the three sectors, but specifically highlights the importance of the agricultural sector in the economy of South Africa, specifically with regards to employment and food security.

• In view of the changing economic outlook of the country, combined with the concern over rising food prices and the general economic instability, re-emphasised the importance of the agricultural sector. According to the document, agriculture provides a “social welfare net” to the most vulnerable in society, especially in rural areas. The agricultural sector has one of the strongest employment multipliers in the economy and it is therefore of particular concern that this sector has recently (2011) experienced an
employment loss of 5.1%. Regardless, agriculture is considered to contribute “vitally to rural economic growth and development and thus increase rural employment, both on and off-farm” (p. 3). It is therefore argued that the agricultural sector, considering its importance in the broader economic framework of South Africa, should be refocussed towards ensuring food security, economic growth and rural economic development (p. 3).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- The vision for this Department is “an equitable, productive, competitive, profitable and sustainable Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries Sector growing to the benefit of all South Africans” (p. 2). The document supports the increased awareness and investment in the Green economy. Although it was not clearly indicated, the department is committed to position itself to capitalise on the significant growth, employment and environmental sustainability benefits provided by the green economy. It is furthermore stated that although interventions are primarily focussed in the rural areas, rural development still largely depend on the “rural-urban linkages”.

- The Integrated Growth and Development Plan support rural development and recognise the need to “support land reform, by creating an enabling environment for the sector to grow for the benefit of rural development” (p. 36). Despite the fact that the land reform project “report high rates of failure” (p. 6), the department is committed to the land reform process as indicated in Sector objective A3 “support the fast-tracking of land reform to achieve targets set by government (DRDLR)” (p. 53). One of the key land reform challenges is argued to be the lack in effective support to land reform beneficiaries (p. 24).

- One of the key focus areas of the document is that of National Food Security and highlights the role of the agricultural sector in ensuring food security. Sector objective B1 of the department is to “improve food and livelihood security”. To this end, it is proposed to develop a “National Food Security Policy” to ensure National and household food safety and security (p. 54).

- The document elaborates on the costly and ineffective attempts of government support to smallholder farms in South Africa. This can largely be attributed to a top-down approach where smallholders farmers has been dictated the scale and diversity of production. It is therefore argued that a more strategic and catalytic intervention and approach is required by government which includes both a “national regulation through the value chain to enable market access on equitable terms for small farmers and highly decentralised and participatory planning for infrastructure and services, where local priorities are defined by farmers themselves”. The document therefore reiterates the “urgent need to shift the emphasis of support from on-farm infrastructure and inputs, to community-level infrastructure, market development and institutional re-engineering” (p. 47).

**Proposals**

- The Integrated Growth and Development Plan furthermore proposes that the transformation and restructuring of the agricultural sector involves a broad-base growth of the “missing middle”. The “missing middle” refers to small-scale commercial sectors operating alongside the commercial sector and subsistence sector. Although the document propagates rural development and sustainable livelihoods, the document do not specifically make proposals with regards to rural development in the Gauteng area.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The document indicated that the lack of integrated spatial planning is hampering the growth of the sector and the success of support programmes and other interventions made by government. The absence of integrated spatial information therefore limits planning and results in ineffective project development (p. 47).

- The document points out that government support to smallholder farms have largely been costly and inefficient and calls for a “strategic and catalytic intervention and approach”. A possible project intervention is the development of smallholder schemes and small enterprises (typically developed in Land category 1 “Small scale Agricultural-based rural settlements” as identified in the project). The Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) provides support to small scale farmers through the R 100-million Agro-Processing Linkage Scheme (APL) and provides incentives to support “pro-poor” and specifically focuses on “resource-poor small-scale farmers to maximise its potential impact on rural South Africa”.

---

**Gauteng Rural Development Plan**

9
Table 6: Industrial Policy Action Plan 2013/14 – 2015/16 (IPAP 5)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The latest Industrial Policy Action Plan 2013/14 – 2015/16 (IPAP 5) was released on 4 April 2013 and represents the fifth iteration of IPAP 2.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

• IPAP 5 is in line with both the National Development Plan and New Growth Path Document, and is considered to be one of the key pillars of the latter. The rationale of IPAP is to “prevent industrial decline and support growth and diversification of South Africa’s manufacturing sector” with the main focus being on job creation. IPAP 5 reemphasises the fundamental role of manufacturing in employment and economic growth of the country. It is also mentioned that industrial policy should particularly focus on “value-adding sectors” which holds high potential for employment and growth multipliers (p. 12).

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

• The document states that the high rates of growth in many countries in Africa (including South Africa), is directly linked to the increase in resource and agricultural commodity prices. The document therefore argues (as the National Development Plan) that regional growth is the “biggest stimulus to long-term growth in South-Africa” (p. 20).

• IPAP 5 outlines the “achievement highlights” of IPAP2 and in terms of industrial financing, the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) is committed and re-oriented to finance IPAP/NGP sectors. The IDC has committed R 5.5 billion for investment in the “Green Economy” and a further R 1.1 billion for investment in the “agriculture and forestry value-chains” (p. 26).

• The agriculture and agro-processing value chain has been identified as a potential area for labour – intensive growth. This value chain has the potential to create a number of direct and down-stream employment opportunities. In order to achieve these employment targets, the document makes provision for six Key Action Programmes, including the following:
  o Development of a Food-processing Strategy and Action Plan,
  o Development of a small-scale milling industry,
  o Enhancement of Competition in the Fruit and Vegetable Canning Industry,
  o Development of a Soybean Action Plan promoting market linkages between primary agricultural producers and processors,
  o Development of the organic food sector, and
  o Supporting the Public-Private Partnership for Food Security.

• Although the Biofuels industry has experienced rapid growth internationally, the South African biofuels market is lagging behind. According to IPAP 5, this sector holds considerable employment opportunities, specifically in the agricultural sector (p. 92).

Proposals

• The document makes no specific proposals relevant to the project.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION / PROJECT RESPONSE

• Agri logistics (and agro-processing) is supported by a clear business case since processed goods are smaller, than primary agri produce and therefore require less cost to transport between nodes (e.g. producer to the market). Therefore instead of having 10 trucks with corn travelling 200km to the processing facility and market, a rural processing and logistics infrastructure will allow only one truck with processed maize to travel 200km to the market. This therefore reduces overall logistics cost associated to each product exponentially, something which is becoming ever more important considering the fact that the diesel price has now exceeded R12 per litre. Ultimately the strategy should/could reduce food inflation in both rural and urban areas.

Table 7: Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF 2009 - 2014)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

GAUTENG RURAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN
• The Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) was published by the Presidency in July 2009 with the theme: ‘Together doing more and better’.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

• The framework, informed by the electoral manifesto of the governing party and the United Nation’s Millennium Development Goals, has as its aim to guide planning and resource allocation decisions across all three spheres of government. This logic is envisaged to work as follows: (1) the MTSF is adopted by the national Cabinet; (2) national and provincial departments develop their five-year strategic plans and budget requirements taking into account the medium-term imperatives; (3) municipalities, informed by the MTSF and their 2006-mandates, adapt their Integrated Development Plans in line with the national and provincial medium-term priorities.

• The MTSF is reviewed annually during mid-year Cabinet *makgotlas*. These reviews, in turn, inform the rolling MTEFs and government’s annual Programme of Action.

• The following strategic objectives are identified in the MTSF, viz., to:
  - Halve poverty and unemployment by 2014;
  - Ensure a more equitable distribution of the benefits of economic growth and reduce inequality;
  - Improve the nation’s health profile and skills-base and ensure universal access to basic services;
  - Improve the safety of citizens by reducing incidents of crime and corruption; and
  - Build a nation free of all forms of racism, sexism, tribalism and xenophobia.

• The *priority areas* to give effect to the above strategic objectives are:
  - More inclusive economic growth, decent work and sustainable livelihoods;
  - Economic and social infrastructure;
  - Rural development, food security and land reform;
  - Access to quality education;
  - Improved health care;
  - The fight against crime and corruption;
  - Cohesive and sustainable communities;
  - Creation of a better Africa and a better world;
  - Sustainable resource management and use; and
  - A developmental state including improvement of public services.

• The framework acknowledges the global slowdown and the resulting impact this will have on the ability to realise the stated objectives. With this as background it argues that the way to deal with this is a strong social compact in which a developmental state is built.

• The key focus of the MTSF in the current period is articulated as, “…(1) to minimise the impact of the economic downturn on the country’s productive capacity, as well as jobs and poverty-reduction measures, (2) to identify opportunities for new areas of growth and economic participation, and (3) to progressively set the country on a new growth and development path”. The central guiding objective being, to by 2014, having placed the country on “…a higher and sustainable growth trajectory, with an expanded and more diversified economic base, with unemployment and poverty having been halved (compared to 2004) and with greater equity and social cohesion”.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

• The framework refers to the IPAP and indicates that this programme is seen as key to meeting a number of the strategic objectives, also in the area of agricultural development and agro-processing;

• Includes under ‘Strategic Priority 3: Comprehensive rural development strategy linked to land and agrarian reform and food security’, the statement that (1) rural areas are not amorphous, homogenous spaces, but diverse areas, with different economic development potentials that need to be developed as such: (2) the need to expand small-scale agricultural production and land reform, including with the aim to deepen food security; (3) improve service delivery in rural areas; (4) improve rural transport; (5) roll-out skills development programmes; (6) revitalise rural towns; and (7) support the development of emerging cooperatives and encouraging an enhanced role for agriculture cooperatives in the value chain including in agro-processing.

• Includes, under ‘Strategic Priority 7’, which deals with ‘the building of cohesive, caring and sustainable communities’.

**Proposals**

• Although the Medium Term Strategic framework has no specific spatial component, the document supports rural development, and reiterates that rural areas should be productive, dynamic and diverse spaces. This viewpoint is clearly in line with the criteria and project outcomes of the project.
**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The Draft LSM is entirely in line with the policy principles of the MTSF.
- The Draft LSM should focus on rural differentiation as key to unlocking the economic potential or rural areas by recognising and accepting the reality that each rural settlement is diverse and unique. There is therefore not a universal solution to rural development but should be sensitive to the local attributes and focus (and tapping) on the strengths and opportunities of each individual area.

---

**Table 8: National Budget 2013 (People’s Guide), Estimates Of National Expenditure 2013 (Abridged Version)**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- These documents represent a description of the approved National Budget for the year 2013 (National Treasury and SARS).

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- Summary of the approved National Budget for 2013.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

*National Budget 2013 (People’s Guide):*

- The National Budget 2013 (People’s Guide) recognises the fact that the South African Economy is growing at a slower rate than expected. The document states that the pace of economic recovery is dependent on private investment and export. To this end, the manufacturing sector is considered to be a fundamental sector for growth and development. The National Budget 2013 (People’s Guide) provides three key themes including “infrastructure investment key to improving service delivery”, “eliminating poverty and tackling inequality” and “quality health care for all”. Although the government is committed to invest R 827 billion in the building of new and the upgrading of existing infrastructure, the document make no specific commitments to rural infrastructure investment.

*Estimates of National Expenditure 2013: Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries*

- According to the Estimates of National Expenditure, a total amount of R 600 million (R 200 million for 3 years) is allocated to the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform for the national rural youth services corps for the training and recruitment of rural youth to work in community based projects, in sectors such as farming and construction (p. v).
- The spending focus for the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries will be on providing support to smallholder farmers by conditional grants (i.e. Comprehensive agricultural support programme, LandCare programme and Ilima/Letsema programme). The department will therefore allocate R 6 billion of conditional grants to support 435 000 subsistence farmers and 54 500 smallholder producers (p. 599). In addition, DAFF will provide comprehensive funding and technical support to 220 000 existing and 80 000 new smallholder producers for food production over the medium term (p. 607).
- The spending of infrastructure by this department is estimated at R 751.5 million, of which R 200 million will be allocated to the drilling and fitting of boreholes for agricultural purposes in rural communities across the country.

*Department of Rural Development and Land Reform*

- The department is committed to reduce the overall poverty in rural areas by ensuring that 2 400 rural households produce their own food by 2014, provide basic services infrastructure (i.e. clinics and sanitation) to 7 278 households, and to reduce spatial inequalities by providing water to 500 households by 2014 (p. 795).
- In order to ensure rural development and the creation of employment opportunities in the agricultural sector by developing 368 farms by 2014, acquiring 310 853 ha for redistribution by 2014 and training farmers as development mentors (p. 800).

**Proposals**

- The document makes no specific proposals relevant to the project.
Table 9: National Development Plan 2030 – Our Future Make It Work

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- National government is clearly committed to the development of rural areas, as evident by the allocated budget, investment and spending in these areas.

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- The first draft national plan was released in November 2011. The National Development plan (NDP) 2030 was published by the Presidency in 2012 in conjunction with the National Planning Commission. The theme of the document is “Our future: make it work”.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- South Africa remains a divided society characterised by inequality, poverty and unemployment. The National Development Plan 2030 calls for the elimination of poverty (reduce the proportion of households with a monthly income below R419 per person from 39% to 0%) and reduction of inequality by 2030 (The Gini-coefficient should fall from 0.69 to 0.6). The point of departure is that “South Africa belongs to its people” and they should join hands and realise that the future success of our country is our collective responsibility therefore the slogan “Our future: make it work”. The rationale of the NDP is to address these challenges by bringing the gap in the divide. The foundation of the plan is based on the collaborative effort to unite South Africans, tapping their energies, building capacity and capabilities of both citizens and leaders alike and in the process growing an inclusive economy. Citizens are encouraged to actively participate in the development process – changing and growing together. The NDP provides a strategic framework document to guide decisions and actions, steered by the President and the Cabinet. The NDP identified the following key priorities (p. 27):
  - Raising employment through faster economic growth,
  - Improving the quality of education, skills development and innovation, and
  - Building the capability of the state to play a developmental, transformative role.

- One of the main driving forces of the document is to stimulate economic growth by increasing employment (from 13 million in 2010 to 24 million in 2030) and reducing poverty (Raise per capita income from R 50 000 in 2010 to R 120 000 by 2030). The document sets the national income share of the bottom 40% of the population from 6% to 10%. In order to achieve these targets, the document identified 13 areas for intervention (Economy and Employment, Economic infrastructure, Environmental sustainability and resilience, Inclusive rural economy, South Africa in the region and the world, Transforming Human Settlements, Health care for all, Social protection, Building Safer Communities, Building a capable and developmental state, Fighting corruption, Nation building and social cohesion). The document furthermore sets a number of objectives (targets) for each area of intervention and proposes a series of subsequent actions to achieve these goals.

- The NDP recognises that South Africa’s hinterland is marked by high levels of poverty with limited employment opportunities. The status quo has been partly been created by the apartheid system that restricted the African population into rural reserves. The result was an advanced and diversified commercial farming sector relying on poorly paid farm labour with a limited economic outlook. The government is, however, committed to change the status quo by improving the overall livelihoods of the rural communities. This is clearly reflected in the NDPs spatial vision for rural South Africa as “the development of vibrant, productive rural communities that create and keep wealth in their areas and also provide benefit to the nation” (p. 283).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- The NDP envisage an inclusive and integrated rural economy viz. dynamic spaces supplied with greater opportunities to “participate fully in the economic, social and political life of the country” supplied by an array of basic services including education, health care and transport opportunities. Basic services are considered to be a critical success factor that enables people to develop personally and in turn transfer their skills to their communities.

- The NDP proposes a multifaceted approach to rural development which includes successful land reform, infrastructure development, job creation (the proportion of adults working in rural areas are set to
increase from 29% to 40% (p. 61)) and rising agricultural production. The agricultural sector is expected to create approximately 1 million jobs by 2030 (p. 219).

- In terms of land reform, the NDP stipulates that the principles underpinning land reform includes the de-racialization of the rural economy, democratic and equitable land allocation and use across race, gender and class, and lastly a sustained production discipline for food security (p. 140). It is clear that National Food Security is high on the priority agenda of the NDP. The document proposes that region-based approaches to food security should be investigated. This implies that South Africa’s agriculture sector should strive to become more “specialised and efficient” and therefore “there may be a trend away from the production of staples to higher-value crops” (p. 230).

- The NDP proposes that the South African economy should increase the export of products proven to be of comparative advantage including agriculture and agro-processing. The document also pro-actively encourages agro-processing, tourism and small enterprise development.

- Both the NDP and the Integrated Growth and Development Plan for the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries refers to increasing support for small-scale farmers (“missing middle”) to operate alongside with the commercial farming sector and subsistence (rural farmers) sector in order to ensure the protection of rural livelihoods.

- The document distinguishes between three types of intervention required, based on the varying opportunities of each rural settlement area (p. 218):
  - “High Economic Potential areas”: Expand irrigated agriculture (according to research the 1.5 million ha can be expanded with an additional 500 000ha), supplemented by dry-land production;
  - “Some Economic Potential areas”: Support non-agricultural activities i.e. agro-processing, tourism and small enterprises; and
  - “Low Economic Potential areas”: The provision of basic services (health care and education) should be prioritised. The development of human capital is therefore encouraged.

- In view of the differentiated characteristics of rural towns and settlements, it is critical that plans and rural strategies should be developed for each area based on its economic potential.

Proposals

- Although the document does not make any specific proposals regarding the study area, the document supports the criteria of the project and envisages vibrant and productive rural communities. The document also emphasises the “spatial coordination and greater clustering of services in all rural areas (including health, education, transport, welfare and security)” (p. 283) therefore building on regional synergies and cluster development.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In view of the concept of “differentiated characteristics of rural towns and settlements”, it is critical that plans and rural strategies should be developed for each area based on their economic potential. The Gauteng Rural development Plans should therefore focus on rural differentiation as key to unlocking the economic potential or rural areas by recognising and accepting the reality that each rural settlement is diverse and unique. There is therefore not a universal solution to rural development but should be sensitive to the local attributes and focus (and tapping) on the strengths and opportunities of each individual area.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Table 10: ASGISA (Accelerated And Shared Growth Initiative For South Africa) Annual Report, 2007

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The ASGISA Annual report 2007.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT
In 2004, the South African Government committed itself to reduce poverty and unemployment with 50% by 2014. The Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative is an executive presidential national development policy framework aimed at:
- Reducing poverty and unemployment with 50% by 2014;
- Accelerating economic growth rate by 4.5% per annum between 2006 and 2009;
- Accelerating economic growth rate by 6% per annum between 2010 and 2014;
- Accelerating infrastructure investment growth by 15-20% per annum to 2014;
- Addressing deficiencies and binding constraints to accelerated economic growth; and
- Making transport freight logistics efficient and competitive for the economy and global market.

The Annual report summarises the successes, failures and areas of future improvement of the initiative.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABLITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- ASGISA emphasises the importance of promoting and developing small enterprise as a strategy to stimulate growth in the 2nd economy and for meeting the Millennium Development Goals. The document therefore pro-actively promotes and supports smallholder development and proposed the development of a smallholder development strategy. The target is to improve the livelihoods of 300,000 subsistence farmers and to reach 100,000 people a year through smallholder schemes. (p. 42).
- The document furthermore identified the production of biofuels as potential benefit to people living in rural areas. (p. 50). The success of this strategy is said to be largely dependent on the skills of the agricultural extension officers to provide adequate support to farmer in their areas.
- The Infrastructure Grant to Provinces supplements the funding of infrastructure programmes on a provincial level. The Grant is linked to the Expanded Public Works Programme and in 2007/08 allocated an additional R 2.8 billion to the programme, focusing particularly on rural access roads. (p. 9).

**Proposals**

- The document makes no specific proposals relevant to the GRDLRPs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ASGISA is no longer a key factor in government, but the analysis of the challenges, the objectives and the proposals are still valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Department of Public Works could be requested to include the GRDLRPs in the roll-out of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) and in the allocation of the Infrastructure Grant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Table 11: National Infrastructure Plan – Strategic Integrated Projects**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- Government adopted the National Infrastructure Plan in 2012. The Cabinet established the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC) to coordinate the long term infrastructure plan.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The New Growth Path document identified certain job drivers to stimulate economic development and opportunities. The document identifies “infrastructure” as a job driver. The National Infrastructure Plan forms part of, and slots into the New Growth Path. Although infrastructure has been identified as a priority area, the spending on infrastructure is projected to decrease from 9.1% GDP to 8.1% of GDP in 2013. This is *inter alia* due to lack in integrated planning and alignment with national policy directives and priorities, and on the other hand weak project planning.
- The PICC was appointed to oversee the coordination and fast-track implementation. The purpose of the National Infrastructure Plan is to centralise the project coordination, but also to propose a holistic and coherent strategy plan. As part of the Infrastructure Plan, both the PICC and Cabinet developed and approved 18 Strategic Integrated Projects (5 Geographically-focussed SIPs, 3 Spatial SIPs, 3 Energy SIPs, 3 Social Infrastructure SIPs, 2 Knowledge SIPs, 1 Regional Integration SIP and 1 Water and Sanitation SIP) to support economic development and address service delivery in marginalised regions.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABLITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

*Strategic Integrated Project 11: Agri-logistics and rural infrastructure*
This SIP mainly focuses on improving the investment in agriculture and rural infrastructure that supports the expansion of production and employment, small-scale farming and rural development, including facilities for storage (silos, fresh-produce facilities, packing houses), transport links to main networks (rural roads, branch train-line, ports), fencing of farms, irrigation schemes to poor areas, improved R&D on rural issues (including expansion of agricultural colleges), processing facilities (abattoirs, dairy infrastructure), aquaculture incubation schemes and rural tourism infrastructure.

### Proposals

- The National Infrastructure Plan makes no specific spatial proposals relevant to the project, but strongly promotes the investment in rural infrastructure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provisions</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- Rural development is a key priority for National Government. The National Infrastructure Plan recognises the importance of rural infrastructure, specifically transportation routes, in unlocking economic potential in rural areas. In this context, one of the key locational criteria of the project (all three land categories) is proximity to transport routes and establishing processing facilities closer to the producer of the agricultural goods.

---

Table 12: Robust And Inclusive Municipal Economies: Policy Guidelines For Implementing Local Economic Development In South Africa, 2005 (Department Of Cooperative Governance) And The National Framework For Local Economic Development In South Africa (2006 – 2011)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Guidelines were released the then Department OF Cooperative Governance in 2005.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The framework document was released by the then Department Provincial and Local Government in 2006. There has been no release of a new LED policy since then.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The concept of Local Economic Development in South Africa evolved post-1994, with the transition to a “developmental local government”. This requires a mind shift from “narrow municipal interests” (focussed only on government inputs into ad-hoc projects) to a more strategic approach. The rationale of the National Framework for LED in South Africa is to support the development of sustainable local economies.
- The Guidelines seek the establishment of a “single and integrated South African economy” that benefits all.
- The Guidelines clearly make a break with earlier forms LED that sought to “make isolated projects work” to a “… focus on supporting productive networks of enterprises that are linked into broader support initiatives and markets for the sale of produce”. As such, the document recognises the need to cut through administrative boundaries when doing economic planning and implementation. In the same vein, the document stresses the need to harmonise and align planning for LED with other national, provincial and municipal development plans and strategies.
- The document stresses that “the central focus of government in implementing LED must be on creating an ideal environment for private sector investment through appropriate public sector investment and by supporting the retention, growth and development of enterprises be they private or cooperatives and whether they are small, medium or large”.
- The document specifies that enterprises that (1) create jobs, and (2) promote ecological sustainability and social development and Black Economic Empowerment, should be targeted, and that this focus/strategy should be supported by the procurement regime of municipalities. Municipalities are also instructed to use all the legal and policy tools at their disposal to facilitate economic growth through companies that demonstrate the desired qualities and that all their activities should be focused on patterns of ownership, supply and production in municipal economies.
- The guidelines stress the need for municipalities to use SEDA and training entities to assist them in developing and honing skills. It is, in this spirit stated that, “The idea is not for municipalities to necessarily run programmes themselves but to focus on establishing forums to build partnerships and to network with a range of stakeholders”.
- The district and metro-scale is seen as the ideal scale for developing regional strategies in which local municipalities (in the case of DMs) have to locate their LED endeavours.
The guidelines stress the need to determine and exploit the competitive and comparative advantages of municipalities. Local governments, are, however, not seen as responsible for directly creating jobs, but rather for creating the conditions in which this can take place.

The guidelines clearly state that LED is not to be incorrectly seen as small-scale community projects. Instead it is to be viewed as a wide, vibrant concept of what the full local economy can and should be. In this pursuit, access to finance, relevant skills development, connections with other government support and infrastructure development and social spending-programmes have to be maximized. Wise use of energy is also stressed.

Finally the guidelines stress the need to focus on areas and sectors with potential in growing the economy and jobs. It also stresses the need to build viable, competitive economies and not weak economies behind protectionist barriers.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- The framework recognises that rural areas are generally underdeveloped and will "require and deserve special attention" (p. 14). The document echoes the sentiment of the National Spatial Development Perspective and Rural transport strategy for South Africa and argues that investment in rural economies should be based on economic potential. Investment in rural areas with lower economic potential should be focused on human capacity viz. basic education and training aimed at improving the basic skills levels of communities. The direct investment in infrastructure should be mainly in areas with higher agricultural potential.

- The Guidelines are crucial for rural development planning and implementation. LED has been, and still is a key construct and instrument in the arsenal of development planners seeking to grow local sustainable local economies, uplift communities and ensure a better quality of life for especially those living in rural areas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The document makes no specific proposals relevant to the project.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proponent</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The project is in line with the principles of the National LED Framework for South Africa.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Table 13: New Growth Path Framework**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• First Edition released by the National Department of Economic Development in October 2010.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The New Growth Path framework was initiated in response to the prevalent dire economic conditions in the country and places job creation at the centre of the economic policy of the country.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The strategy is targeted to create approximately 5 million job opportunities by 2020.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The document identifies a number of job drivers and key priority sectors that will be the focus of the government within the next few years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The rationale of the framework is therefore to identify the country’s economic priority in order to steer investment and actions of the private sector, organised labour and government alike in order to build partnerships in addressing the economic challenges (p. 1).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Principle/Policy</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The New Growth Path framework proposes that more labour-absorbing activities across the main economic sectors should be targeted as key job drivers, more specifically the “agricultural value chain” the “green economy”, and “tourism and certain high-level services” (p. 24).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• One of the core strategies to achieve employment targets in the agricultural sector is to provide support for smallholder schemes and by upgrading employment in commercial agriculture in order to achieve the national target of food security (p. 29).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• The document foresees that approximately 300 000 households can benefit from the smallholder schemes, whilst the opportunity exist to upgrade the living conditions of an additional 660 000 farm-workers. The document supports and promotes the acceleration of the land claims process and support of new farmers following land-claims settlements.

• In order to prevent the current practice of large exports of raw products, the plan is strongly supportive of ‘value-adding activities’ to raw products, including agro-processing. The latter, it envisages can create 145 000 jobs by 2020 (p. 29).

• While the document clearly recognises the need for trade with other countries, it comes out strongly in support of ‘deepening’ the domestic market and of producing products with high multiplier effects in the local economy. As such, it is highly supportive of cooperatives that ‘enable small producers to enter formal value chains and take advantage of economies of scale’ and ‘building on regional synergies and clusters’.

• The government furthermore commits itself to improve their efforts to provide public infrastructure and housing in rural areas in order to lower the cost of economic activity and to foster sustainable communities. It is furthermore stated that the livelihoods of approximately 500 000 can be improved by means of rural development programmes.

Proposals

• Although the NGP framework has no specific spatial component, the document supports rural development. More importantly, the document states that a specific measure for rural development (as job driver) is the identification of viable opportunities, especially by building on regional synergies and clusters. The document also elaborates on the fact that rural development will “depend largely on links to the main urban areas”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEND</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PROPOSALS</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

• The framework indicated that one of the aspects that hampers rural employment is the finalisation of a “spatial perspective that sets out the opportunities available and the choices that we must make in order to lay the basis for aligning government spending, infrastructure and housing investment and economic development initiatives” (p. 35). It is therefore fundamental that the Gauteng Rural Development Plan should provide a thorough insight in the “rural spatialities” in order to create productive, interactive and dynamic rural spaces and unlocking economic opportunities and potential.

• It is recognised that the agricultural value chain offers major opportunities in rural areas and that rural development plans should be focussed on supporting small producers to take advantage of economies of scale.

Table 14: National Industrial Policy Framework (NIdp) And Industrial Policy Action Plan 2 (IPAP2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The NIPF was adopted by Government in January 2007 and the IPAP 2 in February 2011.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

• The NIPF seeks to articulate government’s ‘broad industrial policy vision’ and approach to industrialisation in the context of its key economic growth and social inclusion targets. The IPAP 2 sets out the implementation approach to the NIPF, and outlines the key interventions to give effect to it. As such it seeks to provide clarity and certainty to the private sector and the social partners of government with respect to government’s industrial priorities up to 2014.

• The NIPF clearly states that it is policy framework and not a blueprint for the South African industrial economy. It does not take a ‘one-size-fits-all’ approach to industrialisation. The focus is more on principles and processes by which sector strategies will be developed and prioritised, and not on imposing interventions on people or places. And, in contrast to standardised one size fits all approaches, it puts forward a policy that acts upon real opportunities for growth. In general, the NIPF seeks to diversify the South African economy, boost labour-absorbing economic activities and focus on ‘value-adding tradable goods and services’.

• The IPAP 2 is not only viewed by Government as the implementing programme of the NIPF. Government also sees it as a central tool in the NIPF-job-creation strategy. It is anticipated that the interventions it proposes for the period 2011/12- 2012/13, will lead to job growth of 43 000 direct jobs and 86 000
IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principles/Policy

- While noting that employment in agriculture has been on the decline in South Africa, the NIPF argues that there is still much scope in this sector, with agriculture and agro-processing described as ‘... one of the most labour-intensive in the economy’ and stating that it will, as such, ‘... be investigated further to identify opportunities for employment creation and new enterprise development’.

- In addition to this, the NIPF identifies agro-processing as an area that needs to be supported. With this objective in mind, it calls for the investment in ‘catalytic project-specific infrastructure such as cold chain facilities to unlock particular types of agro-processing activities’.

- The NIPF also includes ‘Small Enterprise Support’ as an area of focus, indicating that it will support activities that fall in this group through ‘... finance and technical support, together with finding ways to strengthen market opportunities for small enterprises, including cooperatives’.

- The IPAP 2 identifies three key Clusters for focus in the period 2011/12-2013/4.
  - Included in Cluster 1 (‘Qualitatively New Areas of Focus’) is listed (1) ‘Green’ and energy-saving industries; and (2) Agro-processing, linked to food security and food pricing imperatives.
  - Included in Cluster 2 (‘Scaled-up and Broadened interventions in Existing IPAP sectors’) is ‘Biofuels’.

- The IPAP 2 includes in the list of sub-sectors under ‘Agro-processing’ the following: (1) Food processing; (2) Beverages; and (3) Medicinal, aromatics and flavourants. It sees these activities as creating huge numbers of jobs, both up and downstream in the economy.

- Reference is made in the IPAP 2 to three broad product-groups in the Agro-processing sector, including (1) ‘High-quality, high-value, competitive sub-sectors, e.g. fresh fruit, wine and fish products’; and (2) “‘New” sub-sectors with niche market potential but small-scale production, e.g. ostrich meat, indigenous flowers, biofuels, essential and olive oils, and medicinal extracts’.

- The IPAP 2 indicates that a ‘Food Processing Strategy and Action Plan’ will be prepared, which will include the development of an institutional structure for engaging the food-processing sector.

Proposals

The document makes no spatial proposals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agri logistics (and agro-processing) is supported by a clear business case since processed goods are smaller, than primary agri produce and therefore require less cost to transport between nodes (e.g. producer to the market). Therefore instead of having 10 trucks with corn travelling 200km to the processing facility and market, a rural processing and logistics infrastructure will allow only one truck with processed maize to travel 200km to the market. This therefore reduces overall logistics cost associated to each product exponentially, something which is becoming ever more important considering the fact that the diesel price has now exceeded R12 per litre. Ultimately the strategy should reduce food inflation in both rural and urban areas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 15: Programme Of Action (POA)

YEAR AND STATUS

- In April 2010 President Zuma signed performance agreements with all members of Cabinet.

DESCRIPTION OF PROGRAMME

- The Medium Term Strategic Framework put forward a set of 12 outcomes that reflect the desired development impact that the Cabinet strives to achieve in terms of the government’s policy priorities. Each outcome is measurable in terms of certain outputs. In 2010, the president signed performance agreements with all members of the Cabinet. The Programme of Action monitors the progress of these delivery agreements.

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

- Outcome 7 of the Programme of Action reflects the government’s commitment towards rural
The vision of the POA is “vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities and food security for all”. This vision forms the foundation and is reflected and of a number of National policy documents. Progress of the outcome is evaluated against measurable indicators i.e. improved access to markets for small scale farmers, improved rural services to support sustainable livelihoods, quality infrastructure for improved access to sustainable services and economic activity constructed and rehabilitated, adequate & reliable rural transport service provide access for people and service to rural areas and jobs created in rural areas.

### Proposals

- This document makes no spatial proposals but is reflective of the government’s pro-actively supportive role in rural development.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary: Proposed Action/Project Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The Program of Action supports the development of rural communities as vibrant and productive spaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 16: National Rural Tourism Strategy**

### Year and Status

- The Rural Tourism Strategy was released by the Department of Tourism in 2012.

### Description of Document

- Tourism and agriculture were identified by National government as the economic pillars for rural development in South Africa. In this context, the National Rural Tourism strategy aims to provide a foundation of support for rural areas to generate economic growth, by utilising their unique assets and basic resources.
- The approach of the National Rural Tourism Strategy is to “prioritise spatial nodes which have a growth potential in order to stimulate growth of the tourism industry in South Africa” (p. 7).
- Despite the fact that a number of tourist attractions are located in rural areas, the rural communities have not been involved in tourism industry and is subsequently not benefitting from the economic potential thereof.
- The Rural Tourism Strategy argues that the tourism sector holds considerable untapped opportunities for rural communities that should be explored, encouraged and supported. The Rural Tourism Strategy is therefore a direct response to government’s vision for rural areas viz. to “…develop vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing towards food security for all…” (p. 22).

### Implications for Land Suitability Analysis

- The National Rural Tourism Strategy recognises the fact that tourism is an important feature in rural economy. The involvement and participation of rural people in tourism has the potential to alleviated poverty.
- The following two forms of tourism are the strategic principles that informs the rural tourism strategy (p. 17):
  - Sustainable Tourism: Tourism attempting to make a low impact on the environment and local culture, while helping to generate future employment for local people; and
  - Pro-Poor Tourism (PPT): it is tourism that results in increased net benefits for poor people.
- The document echoes the principle of “nodal selection” as proposed in the National Spatial Development Perspective. Investment should be focussed in areas with economic potential and argues that “the Strategy’s intent is not to develop each and every area that is deemed rural in South Africa as this would not be sustainable, however, nodal development will be adopted as a more suitable approach” (p. 27). The tourism nodes were selected based on a pattern of nodal selection criteria which include:
  - Nodes are comfortable, mixed use, pedestrian and transit-oriented local areas that include places to live, places to work, and places to shop and get other services,
  - In some areas gateways from one district to another or various exit points from one province to the other informs the nodal characteristics,
  - Significant places of employment must be located within the node hub, and
As the density or occupancy of a node increases, the number and variety of public facilities offering amenities to residents will require an increase.

- The tourism nodal selection criteria broadly align with the project criteria as described in the land categories, specifically the category described as “Rural Economic Activities and Related Settlement”.
- The economic development of rural economies (specifically rural tourism) is reliant and directly influenced by the level of infrastructure development.

### Proposals

The document identified a number of potential Pilot Rural Tourism Nodes in South Africa. Both Mogale City and Hekpoort have been identified in the Gauteng Province as priority nodes over the short to medium term as tourism nodes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SUMMARIES: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The document makes reference to the lack of coherent definition of the concept “rural” in the South African context. The Comprehensive Rural Development Framework 2007 of the DRDLR, which constitutes guidelines for the development of rural areas in South Africa, also confirms that, “there is no legal definition for “rural areas”. In South Africa a distinction is only made between “urban” and “rural”. A rural typology or classification system is therefore required but the Institute for Poverty Alleviation, Land and Agrarian Studies states that the development of such typology will have “far reaching implications for development planning in general for South Africa”. In this context, and the lack of coherent definition of “rural”, it is important that the project should recognise that “rural” constitutes a multi-facetted dimension and requires an in-depth understanding of the individual rural attributes.
- Rural development is largely dependent on the level of rural infrastructure, specifically the transport infrastructure and accessibility to the rural node.

### Table 17: Rural Transport Strategy For South Africa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Rural Transport Strategy was released by the National Department of Transport in 2007. The status of the document is unknown.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

- The plight of rural communities has been emphasised in a number of policy documents. Generally, rural communities have limited access to basic services and the economic mainstream. The Rural Transport Strategy for South Africa was initiated in response to the priorities and needs of rural communities and recognises the fact that the delivery of rural transport infrastructure and services can unlock economic development opportunities and relief poverty. The focus of the strategy is the following:
  - To improve access roads;
  - To develop passable roads; and
  - Address neglected infrastructure and corridors, which are linked to markets and other social services (i.e. agriculture and farming are seen as the main sources of economic development in rural areas and have to be strengthened by providing freight logistical support to boost their productivity).
- In the context of the above, the outcome of the rural transport strategy is duel in nature viz. to “promote coordinated rural nodal and linkage development” and “develop demand-responsive, balanced and sustainable rural transport systems”.

### IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

- Rural transport infrastructure and services and the potential “catalytic development role” thereof should be recognised and the document suggests that additional resources need to be allocated for this purpose.
- Traditionally, rural areas were perceived as being “homogenous” (“typical rural conditions”) in nature and planning solutions in rural areas was generically approached on a “one-size-fits-all” basis. The document steers away from this concept and suggests that each rural area is unique and should therefore be approached in differentiated means. The approach and perspective of the Rural Transport Strategy is therefore largely founded on the principles of the National Spatial Development Perspective.

**GAUTENG RURAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN**

**21**
(NSDP) and argues that rural infrastructure investment should be a function of the economic potential of the rural area and based on the viability of future spatial development. It is proposed that rural areas with lower economic potential can benefit from centrally located clustered service centres provided in wider districts. The document refers to the “spatial dispersal of investment” in an ad-hoc manner that exacerbates the logistical difficulties of service delivery. Rural transport planning should therefore be informed by the prevailing social trends and development factors (p. 26).

- Although government efforts have been devoted to the development of Municipal and District wide Integrated Development Plans (IDPs) these plans are generally too generic to effectively address rural infrastructure and service delivery. The document identifies the “need for strengthened or adapted rural spatial planning procedures” to provide guidance and effectively support the “logical hierarchy” of nodes and linkages as referred to in the preceding paragraph (p. 57).

- One of the key challenges hampering rural development is the link between rural products and services and market activities. Roads and rural railway operations are therefore critical for the movement of produce (specifically higher volumes of cargo) to processing plants, distribution centres and markets. The link between the rural area and the market is not only critical for the economic development of rural areas, but also a “significant contribution to the development and maintenance of viable supply chains in South African agriculture, forestry, mining and other primary sectors” (p. 82).

- At present, the lack in coordination between a multitude of agencies and funding sources has resulted in “an overly complex and un-coordinated rural roads planning and procurement process”. The document identified the need for transformation and institutional alignment. The mandate for the development of local rural roads is vested in the local sphere of government.

**Proposals**

- The document suggests that the development of rural service nodes and transportation linkages should be reflected and supported by a number of policy documents including the Integrated Development Plans, Spatial Development Frameworks, LED programmes and other rural spatial planning procedures, the rationale is to “develop an effectively interlinked network of multi-purpose nodes and linkages”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary</th>
<th>Support</th>
<th>Neutral</th>
<th>Oppose/Contest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The overall views of the rural transport strategy are solid and provide a good foundation from where to further develop rural economies in medium to high potential areas.

### Table 18: SANRAL Annual Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• SANRAL Annual report, 2012.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The SANRAL annual report provides a summary of the vision, status and progress of projects and future programmes and scenarios. SANRAL is committed to the National vision of job creation, skills development and upliftment of rural communities.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• SANRAL embarked on a community development programme which aims to assist rural areas situated along national roads. The objectives of the programme include the following (p. 8):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Help relieve poverty in communities living next to national roads;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Develop skills through transfer and training;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Create jobs and encourage community participation;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Provide facilities to communities next to national roads in remote areas;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Have a positive impact on households in which women are the breadwinners; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Develop SMMEs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Although, one of the objectives of SANRAL is to “improve rural access, infrastructure and mobility”, the document makes no financial commitments towards the cause (p. 70).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Except for the proposed Gauteng Freeway Improvement Project (GFIP) that is currently under dispute,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- Rural infrastructure development (specifically transport infrastructure) is a necessary prerequisite for rural economic development and should form part of as a core strategic intervention of the project. One of the predetermined “desirable criteria” for all three land development categories is the proximity to transport routes viz. “On or close to transport routes to enable access to job opportunities”, and “Served by taxi, bus and/or rail services”.
- The current status of the poverty relief projects as managed by SANRAL is unknown. There is a possibility to approach SANRAL to enquire about the status and the possibility to include the Gauteng Rural Development and Land Reform Plans as part of the project.
- To this means, it is advisable to engage with the Department of Public Works to include the Gauteng Rural Development and Land Reform Plans as part of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) and subsequent beneficiary of the Provincial Infrastructure Grant.

### Table 19: Second Economy Strategy Project, Review Of Second Economy Programmes, January 2008

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The paper was commissioned by the Presidency as an input into the 15 year review process. The views expressed are therefore those of the authors.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

- The Second Economy Strategy forms part of the wider anti-poverty strategy, particularly focussing on the marginalised to created employment and opportunities to effectively participate in the economy.

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

- The document notes that remittances from migrant workers are vital to rural economies.
- Approximately 1.3 million households have access to land for farming purposes of which 97% are engaged in some form of farming activity (p. 14). Commercial subsistence agriculture has shown a steady increase in recent years, and a number of programmes (including the Integrated Food Security Strategy) therefore encourages smallholder development and to provide support for smallholder schemes. The document also refers to a range of initiatives that aims to link smallholders into agro-processing value chains (specifically forestry, sugar and biofuels) (p. 14). The anti-poverty strategy aims to improve the livelihoods of 300 000 subsistence farmers and to reach 100 000 people per year through smallholder schemes (p. 26).
- The Second Economy Strategy identified Agro-processing as a priority sector for investment and employment creation and suggests that the approach need to link to smallholder development strategies and LED.

Proposals

The document makes no spatial proposals.

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- Various National policy documents and programmes promote and support the development of smallholder schemes to stimulate growth in rural areas. Three categories for rural development were developed for the GRDLP-project. The first category “Small scale agricultural-based rural settlements” refers to “rural settlements in which inhabitants have access to enough land to be able to undertake small-scale agricultural/farming activities”. The smallholder schemes and development of small enterprises should specifically be encouraged in this land development category. A possible joint venture or partnership between the Industrial Development Corporation and Department of Trade and Industry together with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform is proposed to provide assistance and financial support to small scale farmers to become commercially successful and ensure both the feasibility and sustainability of the project.
• The document (same as the New Growth Path document) identified Agro-processing as having potentially of creating a substantial number of employment opportunities. Agriculture and agro-processing can therefore be considered as a joint process that holds considerable opportunities for rural development in the Gauteng area. In terms of this particular project, these agro-processing activities can be incorporated in the category defined as “Rural Economic Activities and Related Settlement”.

Table 20: South Africa Geared For Growth 2011

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
<th>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILTY ANALYSIS</th>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>Proosals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2011</td>
<td>The document was released by the Department of Trade and Industry (DTI) and summarises the way in which South Africa has geared itself up for future economic growth amid difficult economic times.</td>
<td>Principle/Policy: The document provides an inventory of identified investment opportunities in the South African economy. The following are of significance to the project: Agro-processing (including food processing in the milling and baking industries, beverages, viz. fruit juices and the local beneficiation, packaging and export of indigenous teas, High-value natural fibres, viz. organic cotton and downstream mohair production, high-value organic food for the local and export markets, and Biofuels production, viz. biodiesel and bioethanol) (p. 34). Tourism (including urban integrated tourism/entertainment precincts, adventure, eco-, sport, conference and cultural tourism, infrastructure development, and green building and green technologies for tourism) (p. 35).</td>
<td></td>
<td>Both agro-processing and tourism were identified by the DTI as potential investment opportunities and should be investigated and explored.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 21: National Spatial Development Perspectives (NSDP)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2003</td>
<td>The National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) is a framework of intervention by the State in achieving equitable and sustainable development by eradicating the spatial legacy of former colonialism and apartheid policy. The NSDP is not intended to be a National Development Plan but should rather be considered as a guideline document for investment and spending decisions viz. an indicative tool for national development planning. The NSDP is therefore a tool that to coordinate the spatial implications of “infrastructure programmes in national, provincial and local spheres of government”. The NSDP provides the following (p. ii): A description of the spatial manifestations of the main social, economic and environmental trends that should form the basis for a shared understanding of the national space economy; A set of principles and mechanisms for guiding infrastructure investment and development decisions; and An interpretation of the spatial realities and the implications for government intervention.</td>
<td>Both agro-processing and tourism were identified by the DTI as potential investment opportunities and should be investigated and explored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2006</td>
<td>The original NSDP was approved and adopted by Cabinet in 2003. The updated version was released and adopted in 2006. The current status of the NSDP is unknown, as it has as yet not been formally retracted.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
experience a loss, whilst larger towns and cities witnessed a net gain, which would suggest that people are moving to places where the prospects of employment are perceived to be higher. In addition to this, the NSDP indicated that there is a strong tendency for rural residents to migrate closer to major roads to capitalise on the through-movement of passing traffic.

### IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

#### Principle/Policy

- The rationale of the NSDP is to achieve maximum impact (social and economic) given the limited resource availability. Government spending is therefore focused on economic infrastructure in areas with economic development potential. It is argued that regions are diverse and should therefore be evaluated in terms of its “diverse and disparate spatial contexts”. This implies that, in areas of lower economic potential, the development approach should be focussed towards i.e. poverty reduction by investing in human capitals development.

- In terms of rural development, the NSDP proposes a number of important interventions that support livelihood enhancement including (p. 11):
  - Sound rural development planning;
  - Aggressive land and agrarian reform; and
  - The significant expansion of agricultural extension services.

#### Proposals

- The NSDP identified the entire Gauteng and surrounding hinterland as the “economic heartland” of the country.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- The concept of “diverse and disparate spatial contexts” as proposed in the NSDP is echoed in the National Development Plan in the sense that the NDP refers to the concept as “differentiated characteristics of rural towns and settlements” and argues that rural strategies and plans should be individually drafted and measured in terms of their economic potential. Investment should, in accordance with this view, be focussed based on the probable economic potential of the rural node. Investment, in areas with less economic potential, should be focussed on the development of human capacity and the provision of basic services viz. a viz. “sound rural development planning”.

- The NSDP states that rural residents tend to locate closer to infrastructure nodes and roads to capitalise on the economic opportunities of through traffic. This principle is contained and reflected in the project criteria and categories of nodes (“on or close to transport routes to enable access to job opportunities” and “Served by taxi, bus and/or rail services”).

#### Table 22: STRATEGIC Plan For The Department Of Agriculture, Forestry And Fisheries 2012/13-2016/17

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Strategic Plan 2012/13 – 2016/17 for the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries covers the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) of the department.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The document echoes the vision and mission statement as summarised in the Integrated Growth and Development Plan (2012) and Annual Report (2012) of the department. The report furthermore states that the focus of the department is predominately centred on people, economic and rural development.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

#### Principle/Policy

- The vision of the Department of Agriculture, forestry and fisheries on rural development is that of “vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing towards food security for all”. One of the core strategies to achieve the employment targets for the agricultural sector is to provide support for smallholder producers by promoting land rental markets, and by using land acquired via land redistribution. Project Programme 2 (Economic Development, Trade and Marketing) further aims to ensure the facilitation of market access for agricultural products in support of economic growth, job creation and development. This particular project programme comprise of three sub-programmes which includes International Relations and Trade, Agro-processing and Marketing, and Cooperatives and Rural
The New Growth Path document identified Agro-processing as potentially capable of creating jobs on a large scale. This department has subsequently embarked on its *Agro-processing Strategic Framework*, which is forecasted to create approximately 145 000 jobs by 2020 (as envisaged in the New Growth Path document).

### Proposals

- Although the document supports rural development and sustainable livelihoods, the document do not specifically make proposals with regards to rural development in the Gauteng area.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td>XXXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- Despite the fact that urban agriculture is supported by a number of government departments, there is no strategy, policy or guideline document that guides urban and peri-urban agriculture. The document therefore identified the need for a strategy on urban and peri-urban agriculture that coordinates and enhances the role of agriculture in urban and peri-urban livelihoods (i.e. fringes of towns and cities). This is particularly important in the context of Gauteng that has (for the time being) for instance been excluded from the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme due to the fact that Gauteng largely constitute “urban”.
- The document (same as the New Growth Path document) identified Agro-processing as having the potential to create a substantial number of jobs. Traditionally, agriculture and industry have been viewed as two separate sectors in terms of their characteristics and respective functions in the economy. Recently, there has been a shift in viewpoint, and the agricultural sector has largely responded to market forces (as consumer preferences changed) and is increasingly being viewed as a “form of industry” itself. Agro-processing refers to the processing of raw materials (from the three primary sectors viz. agriculture, forestry and fisheries) i.e. flour milling and fish canning. Agriculture and agro-processing can therefore be considered as a joint process that holds considerable opportunities for rural development in the Gauteng area. In terms of this particular project, these agro-processing activities can typically be incorporated in the category defined as “Rural Economic Activities and Related Settlement”.

### Table 23: Strategic Plan Of The Department Of Public Works

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The strategic plan reflects the strategic outcome, goals and objectives for the Department of Public Works over the period 2012 – 2016.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Department of Public Works manages the Government’s property portfolio and is responsible for the coordination of the Expanded Public Works Programme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Expanded Public Works Programme aims to create 4.5 million work opportunities by 2014. The Department is therefore committed to the national goals of job creation and poverty alleviation by managing the national government’s immovable assets. The Minister of Public Works is committed to rural development, as he states that, “we will encourage investment and development in rural areas to eradicate inequalities and improve the lives of people in rural areas” (p. ii), and “It is the vision of our Government that we must also promote property development and investment in rural and under-resourced areas in order to enhance basic infrastructure, encourage investment and support micro and small enterprises” (p. ii).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Department of Public Works embarked on a Rural Development Programme which focuses on the disposal of state owned immovable assets in rural areas for development purposes and supports the creation of remote area precincts. The document points out that the Directorate would require R13-million over the following five years to effectively deliver on the Rural Development Programme (p. 30).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The document makes reference to the disposal of state assets to ensure rural development, but does not disclose the nature, location or property value of such assets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

---

**Gauteng Rural Development Plan**

26
The Department of Public Works supports rural development (in unspecified locations) and aims to contribute to the process by disposing state owned properties in rural areas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td></td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The identified categories of Gauteng Rural Development and Land Reform Plans are largely reliant on clusters of state-owned land to be earmarked and included for the purpose of rural development. The Department of Public Works is therefore clearly an important role-player in the project process and could be approached as possible development partner.

**Table 24: National Strategy For Sustainable Development And Action Plan**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- In 2008, Cabinet approved the South Africa National Framework for Sustainable Development (NFSD). The National Strategy for Sustainable Development and Action plan (NSSD 1) was approved by Cabinet on 23 November 2011.
- The NFSD formed the first step of the NSSD 1 process. The NSSD 1 provides the National Strategy for Sustainable Development and an Action Plan to support the implementation of the NFSD.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The National Strategy for Sustainable Development is a proactive strategy that focuses on achieving a delicate balance between human development, ecological protection and economic growth (*viz.* *people, planet and prosperity*).
- The international impetus towards sustainable development was given a huge boost by the 1992-Rio de Janeiro Earth Summit. The 2012 Rio+20 identified two prominent concepts in support of sustainable development namely a renewed emphasis on the “green economy” (in the context of sustainable development and poverty eradication) and the “institutional framework for sustainable development”.
- The NSSD 1 regards sustainable development as a long term commitment to be included in the National vision and values of the country. As such, the NSSD 1 is a high-level guideline document for strategic sustainable development.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- The NSSD 1 disseminates the move towards the “green economy” by means of increased investment in green sectors.
- The document proposes nine key focus areas, including Agriculture, food production and forestry. The document, however, approaches rural development from a sustainability perspective and firstly proposes that agricultural legislation should be reformed to support sustainable farming practices. The document secondly suggests that high-potential agricultural land should be retained for agricultural purposes, wherever feasible (p. 22).

**Proposals**

- The document approaches rural development from a sustainability perspective and proposes that high potential agricultural land be reserved for agricultural purposes and that sustainable land use principles be integrated into land claim projects in rural areas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td></td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The Integrated Growth and Development Plan, 2012 of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries denotes that a total of 12.6% of land in South Africa is considered to be “arable land capable of sustaining intensive to moderately well-adapted cultivation”, whilst only 2% can be described as prime agricultural land (Class I and II) and 4% as high agricultural potential. Rural development proposals should, as far as possible, aim to retain high potential agricultural land (in line with the classification of GDARD).
Table 25: Legal and Policy Inputs to Other Templates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LEGISLATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, Act No 108 of 1996, and subsequent enabling legislation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Constitution includes the following Sections and Chapters that are of importance to the Comprehensive Muyexe Village Plan Project (CMVPP):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Section 24 of the Constitution grants everyone the right to an environment that “is not harmful to their health or well-being” and “to have the environment protected for the benefit of present and future generations”, through legislative and other measures that “secure sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development”. Section 24(b) of the Constitution provides for the state to introduce “legislative and other measures” to give expression to this right. The National Environmental Management Act No 107 of 1998 and its suite of Acts dealing with specific areas of environmental concern (e.g. air quality, biodiversity and waste), and which are the result of this constitutional imperative, contain principles to ensure sustainable development.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Section 25(5) entitles the state to take “reasonable legislative and other measures, within its available resources, to foster conditions which enable citizens to gain access to land on an equitable basis”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Section 26(2) of the Constitution requires of the State to “take reasonable legislative and other measures, within its available resources, to achieve progressive realisation” of the right to “access to adequate housing” as set out in Section 26(1). The Housing Act No 107 of 1997 and the National Housing Code make specific provision for housing assistance by the state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Section 31 of the Constitution gives persons belonging to a cultural, religious or linguistic community the right not to be denied the right to enjoy that culture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Section 33 of the Constitution provides for a right to “administrative action that is lawful, reasonable and procedurally fair”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Chapter 3 of the Constitution, dealing with cooperative government specifies that government is constituted as national, provincial and local spheres of government that are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. Integrated spatial development planning, which is a government function is hence also not the domain of a single sphere of government or organ of state. All the spheres and actors are obliged to “cooperate with one another in good faith by coordinating their actions and legislation with one another”. The Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act No 13 of 2005 provides for the creation of structures and mechanisms to promote and facilitate intergovernmental relations and settle intergovernmental disputes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The Constitution specifies that a municipality must encourage the involvement of communities and community organizations in matters of local government (Section 152(1)(e)) and that “… the public must be encouraged to participate in policy-making” (Section 195).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Section 195(1) of the Constitution sets out the values and principles governing public administration. The following principles are put forward: “Efficient, economic and effective use of resources must be promoted”; “Public administration must be accountable”; and “Transparency must be fostered providing the public with timely, accessible and accurate information”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• In terms of Chapter 7 of the Constitution, local government must promote a safe and healthy environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Chapter 12 of the Constitution provides for the recognition of traditional leaders and grants them a role “as an institution on matters affecting local communities”. However, given the lack of legislation on the matter, the issue of traditional leadership is a very difficult one. The finding of the Communal Land Rights Act 11 of 2004 as unconstitutional troubled the matter further.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Municipal Systems Act, Act No 32 of 2000, and Regulations passed in terms of the Act in August 2001**

This Act provides a definition of a municipality in South Africa, prescribes the core principles, mechanisms and processes that municipalities have to engage in and embark upon to move progressively towards the social and economic upliftment of their communities and the goal of ensuring universal access to essential services that are affordable to all.

The Act includes three chapters that are crucial to the development planning processes of municipalities and in which ideas for an initiative like the CMVPP will be located, if it is to become part of the investment and spending profile of a municipality:

• Chapter 4 deals with community participation, which is important to consider, both from the perspective
of involving communities in the planning for and implementation of the CMVPP, and for inclusion of the CMVPP in the IDPs of the Greater Giyani LM and Mopani DM;

- Chapter 5 deals with Municipal Integrated Development Planning and prescribes the preparation, review, components and adoption of Integrated Development Plans; and
- Chapter 6 deals with Performance Management, which is a crucial component in ensuring that plans and programmes are implemented.

The Regulations published in August 2001 in terms of the Act, add a series of detail requirements to the spatial development framework, as prescribed in Section 26 as a component of and IDP, and Performance Management.

**Municipal Finance Management Act, Act No 56 of 2003**

The Act seeks to ensure sound and sustainable management of the financial affairs of municipalities and the establishment of Treasury standards for the local sphere of government. The Act *inter alia* specifies that Mayors must ensure that:

- The process of preparing the municipality’s annual budget and the review of its IDP are coordinated; and
- The tabled budget and any revisions to the IDP (stemming from the annual IDP review) or budget-related policies are mutually consistent and credible.

The Act also mandates municipalities, when preparing their annual budgets, to *inter alia*:

- Take into consideration their IDPs;
- Revise their IDPs taking into account realistic revenue and expenditure projections for future years; and
- Set measurable performance objectives for each revenue source and for each vote, including of course any expenditure to be incurred in terms of their LED strategies.

Municipalities must also, when considering capital projects, consider all operational expenses to be incurred during the life of the project. Given the close link between IDPs and LED, with some municipalities even seeing LED as a sub-component of IDPs, what is mandated in relation to IDP, also applies to LED.


The CMVPP will require intergovernmental collaboration and support from all three spheres of government – national, provincial and municipal. This Act creates a framework for all three spheres of government to promote and facilitate greater intergovernmental coordination, alignment and support through the establishment of intergovernmental structures (forums) and to provide mechanisms to resolve disputes between spheres. Crucial in this regard is the singular and collaborative pursuit by all three spheres of government of the national development objectives (i.e. sustainable economic growth, job creation, poverty alleviation, equity and efficient and effective service delivery).

A key component of the Act is for all three spheres of government to:

- Consider and engage each other in their actions;
- Avoid duplication;
- Coordinate their actions; and
- Ensure that they have adequate capacity and effective systems/set procedures to enable engagement with each other and participate meaningfully in the intergovernmental structures.

In addition to these provisions, the Act also calls for the establishment of a District Intergovernmental Forum on which *inter alia* the Mayors of the District and Local Municipalities in the district serve and which, amongst others, has the task of (1) coordinating and aligning the development actions of the respective municipalities, and (2) providing support to each other in giving effect to their mandates and implementing national and provincial legislation and policy.

Municipalities may also establish *Inter-municipality Forums* to promote and facilitate intergovernmental relations between them. While none of the structures are decision-making structures, they may adopt resolutions and make recommendations on such matters as they engage with, in their actions.

Finally, the Act also provides for the crafting of ‘Implementation Protocols’, which organs of state in different, or the same sphere of government may enter into when a particular task, project or programme requires action from more than one organ of state. The Guidelines provide guidance as to the legal and practical matters around the setting up of such protocols. Of specific interest is the notion of *‘joint programmes’* within a particular sphere of government. In terms of the Guidelines *‘joint programmes’* are defined as *‘Those
programmes that transcend the conventional organisational boundaries in planning, budgeting and implementation resulting in a number of departments/agencies/ministries responsible for one aspect of the programme, although none is responsible for it in its entirety’.

Cooperatives Act, Act No 14 of 2005

This Act provides for:
- The formation and registration of cooperatives;
- The establishment of a Cooperatives Advisory Board
- The winding up of cooperatives;
- The repeal of Act 91 of 1981, which dealt with cooperatives in the previous dispensation; and
- The provision of measures to deal with such “previous dispensation” cooperatives.

The Act essentially seeks to provide a supportive legal environment to encourage the establishment of cooperatives and to enable cooperatives to be:
- Legally established as distinct legal entities, separate from their owners,
- Well managed, grow/develop and
- Allowed and enabled to flourish.

Very specifically the Act seeks to support emerging cooperatives, particularly those owned by women, young people, black people, persons with disabilities and people living in rural areas. To this effect, the Act provides for the design and implementation of appropriate support programmes and measures for cooperatives, as well as the support of the initiative in the work of all three spheres of government. The objective being to assist in establishing and supporting sustainable, successful cooperatives.

The National Environmental Management Act, Act No 107 of 1998 and Regulations published in terms of the Act in 2010

This Act seeks to ensure cooperative environmental governance by:
- Establishing principles for decision-making on matters affecting the environment; and
- Creating institutions that will promote co-operative governance and procedures for co-ordinating environmental functions exercised by organs of state.

The Act and the Regulations dealing with Environmental Impact Assessments, inter alia seek to ensure that environmental sustainability considerations are built into all activities by providing for norm-driven development, and prescribing the principles to be adhered to and the steps/procedures to be followed in all applications for developments, such as the CMVPP. In addition to this, the Act prescribes the roles and responsibilities of all parties in developments such as the CMVPP, with regard to ensuring environmental sustainability and wise natural resource use.

National Small Business Amendment Act, Act No 29 of 2004

The Act amended the National Small Business Act, 1996, by repealing all provisions pertaining to the Ntsika Enterprise Promotion Agency. It also provides for the establishment of the Small Enterprise Development Agency (SEDA), which was done in December 2004, and makes provision for:
- The incorporation of the Ntsika Enterprise Promotion Agency;
- The National Manufacturing Advisory Centre;
- Any other designated institution into the Agency to be established; and
- The necessary transitional arrangements to give effect to the above three actions/changes.

The Act specifies the objectives of SEDA as:
- Designing and implementing support programmes for small businesses;
- Enabling small businesses to promote economic growth, job creation and equity; and
- Strengthening the capacity of service providers to support small enterprises and of small enterprises to compete locally and internationally.

POLICIES, STRATEGIES, PLANS AND FRAMEWORKS

The National Development Plan (NDP) 2030. (The Presidency, 2012, in conjunction with the National Planning Commission)

The first draft of the plan was released in November 2011. The subsequent National Development plan (NDP) 2030 was published by the Presidency in 2012 in conjunction with the National Planning Commission. The ‘slogan’ of the document is “Our future: make it work”.

GAUTENG RURAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN
The Plan recognises that South Africa remains a divided society characterised by inequality, poverty and unemployment and calls for the elimination of poverty (reduce the proportion of households with a monthly income below R419 per person from 39% to 0%) and the reduction of inequality by 2030 (The Gini-coefficient should fall from 0.69 to 0.6). The point of departure is that “South Africa belongs to its people” and they should join hands and realise that the future success of our country is our collective responsibility therefore the slogan “Our future: make it work”. The rationale of the NDP is to address these challenges by bridging the gap in the divide. The foundation of the plan is based on the collaborative effort to unite South Africans, tapping their energies, building capacity and capabilities of both citizens and leaders alike and in the process growing an inclusive economy. Citizens are encouraged to actively participate in the development process – changing and growing together.

The NDP provides a strategic framework document to guide decisions and actions, steered by the President and the Cabinet. The NDP identified the following key priorities (p27):
- Raising employment through faster economic growth;
- Improving the quality of education, skills development and innovation; and
- Building the capability of the state to play a developmental, transformative role.

One of the main driving forces of the document is to stimulate economic growth by increasing employment (from 13 million in 2010 to 24 million in 2030) and reducing poverty (raise per capita income from R 50 000 in 2010 to R 120 000 by 2030). The document sets the national income share of the bottom 40% of the population from 6% to 10%. In order to achieve these targets, the document identifies 13 areas for intervention (Economy and Employment, Economic infrastructure, Environmental sustainability and resilience, Inclusive Rural economy, South Africa in the Region and the World, Transforming Human Settlements, Health Care for All, Social protection, Building Safer Communities, Building a Capable and Developmental State, Fighting Corruption, Nation building and Social Cohesion). The document furthermore sets a number of objectives (targets) for each area of intervention, and proposes a series of subsequent actions to achieve these goals.

The NDP recognises that South Africa’s rural areas are marked by high levels of poverty with limited employment opportunities, largely as a result of past colonial and apartheid policies and practices. The result was an advanced and diversified commercial farming sector relying on poorly paid farm labour with a limited economic outlook. The plan seeks to change this by improving the overall livelihoods of the rural communities. This is clearly reflected in the NDP’s spatial vision for rural South Africa as “the development of vibrant, productive rural communities that create and keep wealth in their areas and also provide benefit to the nation” (p 283).

In more detail with regards to rural development, the NDP:
- Envisages an inclusive and integrated rural economy viz. dynamic spaces supplied with greater opportunities to “participate fully in the economic, social and political life of the country” supplied by an array of basic services including education, health care and transport opportunities. Basic services are considered to be a critical success factor that enables people to develop personally and in turn transfer their skills to their communities.
- Proposes a multifaceted approach to rural development which includes successful land reform, infrastructure development, job creation (the proportion of adults working in rural areas is set to increase from 29% to 40% (p.61)) and rising agricultural production. The agricultural sector is expected to create approximately 1 million jobs by 2030 (p.219).
- Stipulates that the principles underpinning land reform includes (1) deracialisation of the rural economy, (2) democratic and equitable land allocation and use across race, gender and class, and (3) a sustained production discipline for food security (p.140).

National Food Security is high on the priority agenda of the NDP. The document proposes that region-based approaches to food security should be investigated. This implies that South Africa’s agriculture sector should strive to become more “specialised and efficient” and therefore “there may be a trend away from the production of staples to higher-value crops” (p.230).

With regards to rural economic growth and development:
- The NDP proposes that the country should increase the export of products proven to be of comparative advantage including agriculture and agro-processing. The plan also pro-actively encourages agro-processing, tourism and small enterprise development.
• Both the NDP and the Integrated Growth and Development Plan for the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries refers to increasing support for small-scale farmers (“missing middle”) to operate alongside with the commercial farming sector and subsistence (rural farmers) sector in order to ensure the protection of rural livelihoods.

• The document distinguishes between 3 types of interventions required based on the varying opportunities of each rural settlement area (p.218):
  o “High Economic Potential areas”: Expand irrigated agriculture (according to research the 1.5 million ha can be expanded with an additional 500 000ha), supplemented by dry-land production;
  o “Some Economic Potential areas”: Support non-agricultural activities i.e. agro-processing, tourism and small enterprises; and
  o “Low Economic Potential areas”: The provision of basic services (health care and education) should be prioritised. The development of human capital is therefore encouraged.

While the NDP does not make any specific spatial proposals, it supports the CMVPP and envisages vibrant and productive rural communities. The document also emphasises the “spatial coordination and greater clustering of services in all rural areas (including health, education, transport, welfare and security)” (p.283) therefore building on regional synergies and cluster development. In view of the concept of “differentiated characteristics of rural towns and settlements”, a project like the CMVPP should be prepared with the economic potential of the area as key consideration.


• This document was released by the National Economic Development Department in October 2010.
• It recognises the dire global economic conditions the country finds itself in and the threats these pose for an already low-labour absorptive economy.
• It proposes an active, interventionist and targeted approach to job creation in areas and sectors with strong potential for mega-job creation. As noted in the document, “... the aim is to target our limited capital and capacity at activities that maximise the creation of decent work opportunities... the state must coordinate its efforts around core priorities rather than dispersing them across numerous efforts, however worthwhile, that do not contribute to a sustained expansion in economic opportunities for our people”.
• It includes a target of creating 5 million new jobs by 2020.
• The plan inter alia proposes that government, over the short and medium term, pursues “direct employment schemes” and “labour-absorbing activities”, in amongst six of the targeted sectors, “the agricultural value chain’ and ‘the green economy’.
• In order to prevent the current practice of large exports of raw products, the plan is strongly supportive of “value-adding activities” to raw products, including agro-processing. The latter, it envisages can create 145 000 jobs by 2020. While the document clearly recognises the need for trade with other countries, it comes out strongly in support of “deepening” the domestic market and of producing products with high multiplier effects in the local economy. As such, it is highly supportive of cooperatives that “enable small producers to enter formal value chains and take advantage of economies of scale” and “building on regional synergies and clusters”. To this effect, it foresees a situation where there will be 300 000 households in smallholder schemes by 2020.
• While the strategy has no specific spatial component/plan, it does argue that, “A core task for the New Growth Path is ... the identification of viable and sustainable opportunities for historically disadvantaged regions” and “Rural development will necessarily depend largely on links to the main urban areas”. In addition to this, it suggests that, “Given the extraordinary differences in natural, economic and social conditions across our country, provinces and localities must adapt the broad drivers in the growth path to their circumstances”. Finally, it foresees that, “A spatial economic strategy (still to be prepared) will indicate how the jobs drivers affect different provinces, municipalities and rural areas, linking in to the rural development strategy and industrial policies”.
• The CMVPP fits perfectly in the approach, objectives and preferences of the New Growth Path. It is as close as one can get to a 100% match. Engaging with the Department, making them aware of the project and securing their support for it, would be a worthwhile endeavour.

The National Infrastructure Plan: Strategic Integrated Projects, 2012 (Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission)

• Cabinet established the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC) to coordinate the long term infrastructure plan, and adopted the National Infrastructure Plan (NIP) in 2012.
• The New Growth Path identified certain job drivers to stimulate economic development and opportunities. The document identified “infrastructure” as a job driver. The NIP forms part of, and slots
The Rural Tourism Strategy, 2012 (Department of Tourism)

- The purpose of the NIP is to centralise the project coordination, but also to propose a holistic and coherent strategy plan. As part of the Infrastructure Plan, both the PICC and Cabinet developed and approved 18 Strategic Integrated Projects (5 Geographically-focussed SIPs, 3 Spatial SIPs, 3 Energy SIPs, 3 Social Infrastructure SIPs, 2 Knowledge SIPs, 1 Regional Integration SIP and 1 Water and Sanitation SIP) to support economic development and address service delivery in marginalised regions.

- The approach of the National Rural Tourism Strategy is to “prioritise spatial nodes which have a growth potential in order to stimulate growth of the tourism industry in South Africa” (p.7). Despite the fact that a number of tourist attractions are located in rural areas, the rural communities have not been involved in tourism industry and is subsequently not benefitting from the economic potential thereof.

- The National Rural Tourism Strategy recognises the fact that tourism is an important feature in rural economy. The involvement and participation of rural people in tourism has the potential to alleviated poverty.

- The following two forms of tourism are the strategic principles that informs the rural tourism strategy (p.17):
  - Sustainable Tourism: Tourism attempting to make a low impact on the environment and local culture, while helping to generate future employment for local people; and
  - Pro-Poor Tourism (PPT): it is tourism that results in increased net benefits for poor people.

- The document echoes the principle of “nodal selection” as proposed in the National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP). In accordance with this approach investment has to be focussed in areas with economic potential. It is hence argued that it is not “the Strategy’s intent is to develop each and every area that is deemed rural in South Africa, as this would not be sustainable; however, nodal development will be adopted as a more suitable approach” (p.27). The tourism nodes were selected based on a pattern of nodal selection criteria which includes:
  - Nodes are comfortable, mixed use, pedestrian and transit-oriented local areas that include places to live, places to work, and places to shop and access other services;
  - Nodes perform the function of gateways from one district/province to another; and
  - Nodes provide significant employment opportunities (p.29).

The Rural Transport Strategy, 2007 (National Department of Transport)

- The National Rural Tourism Strategy argues that the tourism sector holds considerable untapped opportunities for rural communities that should be explored, encouraged and supported. The Rural Tourism Strategy is therefore a direct response to government’s vision for rural areas viz. “...develop vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing towards food security for all...” (p.22).

- The National Rural Tourism Strategy recognises the fact that tourism is an important feature in rural economy. The involvement and participation of rural people in tourism has the potential to alleviated poverty.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Rural Tourism Strategy, 2012 (Department of Tourism)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The purpose of the NIP is to centralise the project coordination, but also to propose a holistic and coherent strategy plan. As part of the Infrastructure Plan, both the PICC and Cabinet developed and approved 18 Strategic Integrated Projects (5 Geographically-focussed SIPs, 3 Spatial SIPs, 3 Energy SIPs, 3 Social Infrastructure SIPs, 2 Knowledge SIPs, 1 Regional Integration SIP and 1 Water and Sanitation SIP) to support economic development and address service delivery in marginalised regions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The approach of the National Rural Tourism Strategy is to “prioritise spatial nodes which have a growth potential in order to stimulate growth of the tourism industry in South Africa” (p.7). Despite the fact that a number of tourist attractions are located in rural areas, the rural communities have not been involved in tourism industry and is subsequently not benefitting from the economic potential thereof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The National Rural Tourism Strategy recognises the fact that tourism is an important feature in rural economy. The involvement and participation of rural people in tourism has the potential to alleviated poverty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The following two forms of tourism are the strategic principles that informs the rural tourism strategy (p.17):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Sustainable Tourism: Tourism attempting to make a low impact on the environment and local culture, while helping to generate future employment for local people; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Pro-Poor Tourism (PPT): it is tourism that results in increased net benefits for poor people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The document echoes the principle of “nodal selection” as proposed in the National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP). In accordance with this approach investment has to be focussed in areas with economic potential. It is hence argued that it is not “the Strategy’s intent is to develop each and every area that is deemed rural in South Africa, as this would not be sustainable; however, nodal development will be adopted as a more suitable approach” (p.27). The tourism nodes were selected based on a pattern of nodal selection criteria which includes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Nodes are comfortable, mixed use, pedestrian and transit-oriented local areas that include places to live, places to work, and places to shop and access other services;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Nodes perform the function of gateways from one district/province to another; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Nodes provide significant employment opportunities (p.29).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Rural Transport Strategy, 2007 (National Department of Transport)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The National Rural Tourism Strategy argues that the tourism sector holds considerable untapped opportunities for rural communities that should be explored, encouraged and supported. The Rural Tourism Strategy is therefore a direct response to government’s vision for rural areas viz. “...develop vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing towards food security for all...” (p.22).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The National Rural Tourism Strategy recognises the fact that tourism is an important feature in rural economy. The involvement and participation of rural people in tourism has the potential to alleviated poverty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The following two forms of tourism are the strategic principles that informs the rural tourism strategy (p.17):
  - Sustainable Tourism: Tourism attempting to make a low impact on the environment and local culture, while helping to generate future employment for local people; and
  - Pro-Poor Tourism (PPT): it is tourism that results in increased net benefits for poor people.

- The document echoes the principle of “nodal selection” as proposed in the National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP). In accordance with this approach investment has to be focussed in areas with economic potential. It is hence argued that it is not “the Strategy’s intent is to develop each and every area that is deemed rural in South Africa, as this would not be sustainable; however, nodal development will be adopted as a more suitable approach” (p.27). The tourism nodes were selected based on a pattern of nodal selection criteria which includes

---

**GAUTENG RURAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN**

33
rural areas and have to be strengthened by providing freight logistical support to boost their productivity).

- In the context of the above, the outcome of the rural transport strategy is duel in nature viz. to “promote coordinated rural nodal and linkage development.”
- The strategy argues that rural transport infrastructure and services, and their potential “catalytic development role” should be recognised. As a result of this, the document suggests that additional resources need to be allocated to such transport infrastructure.
- In contrast to traditional conceptions of rural areas as being “homogenous” (i.e. with “typical rural conditions”), planning solutions in such areas were generically approached on a one-size-fits-all basis. The document steers away from this concept and suggests that each rural area is unique and should therefore be approached in differentiated means. As such, the approach and perspective of the Rural Transport Strategy is therefore largely founded on the principles of the National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) and argues that rural infrastructure investment should be a function of the economic potential of the rural area and based on the viability of future spatial development. It is proposed that rural areas with lower economic potential can benefit from a centrally located clustered service centres provided in the district areas. The document refers to the “spatial dispersal of investment” in an ad-hoc manner that exacerbates the logistical difficulties of service delivery. Rural transport planning should therefore be informed by the prevailing social trends and development factors (p.57).
- It is noted in the strategy that, although government efforts have been devoted to the preparation of municipal IDPs, these plans are generally too generic to effectively address rural infrastructure and service delivery. Therefore the document identifies the “need for strengthened or adopted rural spatial planning procedures” to provide guidance and effectively support the “logical hierarchy” of nodes and linkages as referred to in the preceding paragraph (p. 57).
- One of the key challenges hampering rural development is the link between rural products and services and market activities. Roads and rural railway operations are critical for the movement of produce (specifically higher volumes of cargo) to processing plants, distribution centres and markets. As such the strategy emphasises that the link between the rural area and the market is not only critical for the economic development of rural areas, but also a “significant contribution to the development and maintenance of viable supply chains in South African agriculture, forestry, mining and other primary sectors” (p.82).
- The strategy argues that the lack in coordination between a multitude of agencies and funding sources has resulted in “an overly complex and un-coordinated rural roads planning and procurement process”. The document identifies the need for transformation and institutional alignment.
- The document suggests that the development of rural service nodes and transportation linkages should be reflected and supported by policy documents such as the IDPs, Spatial Development Frameworks (SDFs), LED programmes and other rural spatial planning procedures, the rationale being to “develop an effectively interlinked network of multi-purpose nodes and linkages”.


The NIPF:
- The NIPF was adopted by Government in January 2007, the IPAP 2 in February 2011 and the IPAP 5 in April 2013.
- The NIPF seeks to articulate government’s “broad industrial policy vision” and approach to industrialisation in the context of its key economic growth and social inclusion targets.
- The IPAPs sets out the implementation approach to the NIPF, and outlines the key interventions to give effect to it. As such they seek to provide clarity and certainty to the private sector and the social partners of government with respect to government’s industrial priorities.
- The NIPF clearly states that it is policy framework and not a blueprint for the South African industrial economy. It does not take a “one-size-fits-all” approach to industrialisation. The focus is more on principles and processes by which sector strategies will be developed and prioritised, and not on imposing interventions on people or places. And, in contrast to standardised one size fits all approaches, it puts forward a policy that acts upon real opportunities for growth.
- In general, the NIPF seeks to diversify the South African economy, boost labour-absorbing economic activities and focus on “value-adding tradable goods and services”.

The IPAP 2:
- The IPAP 2 is not only viewed by Government as the implementing programme of the NIPF. Government also sees it as a central tool in the NIPF-job-creation strategy. It is anticipated that the interventions it
proposes for the period 2011/12-2012/13, will lead to job growth of 43 000 direct jobs and 86 000 indirect jobs, i.e. altogether 129 000 jobs.

- While noting that employment in agriculture has been on the decline in South Africa, the NIPF argues that there is still much scope in this sector, with agriculture and agro-processing described as “... one of the most labour-intensive in the economy” and stating that it will, as such, “... be investigated further to identify opportunities for employment creation and new enterprise development”.
- In addition to this, the NIPF identifies agro-processing as an area that needs to be supported. With this objective in mind, it calls for the investment in “catalytic project-specific infrastructure such as cold chain facilities to unlock particular types of agro-processing activities”.
- The NIPF also includes “Small Enterprise Support” as an area of focus, indicating that it will support activities that fall in this group through “... finance and technical support, together with finding ways to strengthen market opportunities for small enterprises, including cooperatives”.
- The IPAP 2 identifies three key clusters for focus in the period 2011/12-2013/4.
  - Included in Cluster 1 ("Qualitatively New Areas of Focus”) is listed (1) “Green” and energy-saving industries; and (2) Agro-processing, linked to food security and food pricing imperatives.
  - Included in Cluster 2 (“Scaled-up and Broadened interventions in Existing IPAP sectors”) is “Biofuels”.
- The IPAP 2 includes in the list of sub-sectors under ‘Agro-processing’ the following: (1) Food processing; (2) Beverages; and (3) Medicinal, aromatics and flavourants. It sees these activities as creating huge numbers of jobs, both up and downstream in the economy.
- Reference is made in the IPAP 2 to three broad product-groups in the Agro-processing sector, including (1) “High-quality, high-value, competitive sub-sectors, e.g. fresh fruit, wine and fish products”; and (2) “New sub-sectors with niche market potential but small-scale production, e.g. ostrich meat, indigenous flowers, biofuels, essential and olive oils, and medicinal extracts”.
- The IPAP 2 indicates that a “Food Processing Strategy and Action Plan” will be prepared, which will include the development of an institutional structure for engaging the food-processing sector.

The IPAP 5:
- IPAP 5 is in line with both the National Development Plan and the New Growth Path, and is considered to be one of the key pillars of the latter. The rationale of the IPAP is to “prevent industrial decline and support growth and diversification of South Africa’s manufacturing sector” with the main focus being on job creation.
- IPAP 5 reemphasises the fundamental role of manufacturing in employment and economic growth of the country. It is also mentioned that industrial policy should particularly focus on “value-adding sectors” which hold high potential for employment and growth multipliers (p.12).
- The document states that the high rates of growth in many countries in Africa (including South Africa are directly linked to the increase in resource and agricultural commodity prices. The document therefore argues (as the National Development Plan) that regional growth is the “biggest stimulus to long-term growth in South-Africa” (p.20).
- The document indicates that the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) is committed and ready to finance IPAP/NGP sectors. It is noted in this regards that the IDC has committed R 5.5 billion for investment in the “Green Economy” and a further R 1.1 billion for investment in the “agriculture and forestry value-chains” (p.26).
- Although the Biofuels industry has experienced rapid growth internationally, the South African biofuels market is lagging behind. According to IPAP 5, this sector holds considerable employment opportunities, specifically in the agricultural sector (p.92).
- The agriculture and agro-processing value chain is identified in the document as a significant area for labour-intensive growth. This value chain has the potential to create a number of direct and downstream employment opportunities. In order to achieve these employment targets, the document makes provision for six Key Action Programmes, including the following:
  - Development of a Food-processing Strategy and Action Plan;
  - Development of a small-scale milling industry;
  - Enhancement of Competition in the Fruit and Vegetable Canning Industry;
  - Development of a Soybean Action Plan promoting market linkages between primary agricultural producers and processors;
  - Development of the organic food sector; and
  - Supporting the “Public-Private Partnership for Food Security”.

The Medium-Term Strategic Framework: A framework to guide Government’s programme in the electoral
**mandate period 2009-2014 (issued by the Minister in The Presidency of the Republic of South Africa)**

- The Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) was published by the Presidency in July 2009 with the theme: “Together doing more and better”.

- The framework, informed by the electoral manifesto of the governing party and the United Nation’s Millennium Development Goals, has as its aim to guide planning and resource allocation decisions across all three spheres of government. This logic is envisaged to work as follows:
  - The MTSF is adopted by the national Cabinet;
  - National and provincial departments develop their five-year strategic plans and budget requirements taking into account the medium-term imperatives; and
  - Municipalities, informed by the MTSF and their 2006-mandates, adapt their Integrated Development Plans in line with the national and provincial medium-term priorities.

- The MTSF is reviewed annually during mid-year Cabinet *makgotlas*. These reviews, in turn, inform the rolling MTEFs and government’s annual Programme of Action.

- The following *strategic objectives* are identified in the MTSF, *viz.*, to:
  - Halve poverty and unemployment by 2014;
  - Ensure a more equitable distribution of the benefits of economic growth and reduce inequality;
  - Improve the nation’s health profile and skills-base and ensure universal access to basic services;
  - Improve the safety of citizens by reducing incidents of crime and corruption; and
  - Build a nation free of all forms of racism, sexism, tribalism and xenophobia.

- The *priority areas* to give effect to the above strategic objectives are:
  - More inclusive economic growth, decent work and sustainable livelihoods;
  - Economic and social infrastructure;
  - *Rural development, food security and land reform*;
  - Access to quality education;
  - Improved health care;
  - The fight against crime and corruption;
  - Cohesive and sustainable communities;
  - Creation of a better Africa and a better world;
  - Sustainable resource management and use; and
  - A developmental state including improvement of public services.

- The framework acknowledges the global slowdown and the resulting impact this will have on the ability to realise the stated objectives. With this as background, it argues that the way to deal with this is a strong social compact in which a developmental state is built.

- The key focus of the MTSF in the current period is articulated as, ‘…(1) to minimise the impact of the economic downturn on the country’s productive capacity, as well as jobs and poverty-reduction measures, (2) to identify opportunities for new areas of growth and economic participation, and (3) to progressively set the country on a new growth and development path’. The central guiding objective being, to by 2014, having placed the country on ‘…a higher and sustainable growth trajectory, with an expanded and more diversified economic base, with unemployment and poverty having been halved (compared to 2004) and with greater equity and social cohesion’.

- With specific reference to the CMVPP, the framework *inter alia*:
  - Refers to the IPAP (listed above) and indicates that this programme is seen as key to meeting a number of the strategic objectives, also in the area of agricultural development and agro-processing;
  - Expresses strong support for the strengthening and development of SMMEs and cooperatives;
  - Includes under ‘Strategic Priority 3: Comprehensive rural development strategy linked to land and agrarian reform and food security’, the statement that (1) rural areas are not amorphous, homogenous spaces, but diverse areas, with different economic development potentials that need to be developed as such; (2) the need to expand small-scale agricultural production and land reform, including with the aim to deepen food security; (3) improve service delivery in rural areas; (4) improve rural transport; (5) roll-out skills development programmes; (6) revitalise rural towns; and (7) support the development of emerging cooperatives and encouraging an enhanced role for agriculture cooperatives in the value chain including in agro-processing;
  - Includes, under "Strategic Priority 7", which deals with “the building of cohesive, caring and sustainable communities”, a range of objectives and strategies, which are important from the perspective of the CMVPP with regards to the support for the local community; and
  - Includes, under "Strategic Priority 9", which deals with “sustainable resource management and use”, a range of objectives and requirements that are of importance to and supportive of the CMVPP as potentially hosting a “green industry”.

---

**GAUTENG RURAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN**

36
Expanded Public Works Programme, 2004 (Department of Public Works)

- The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) seeks to build skills, provide work-place experience, reduce unemployment and increase the capacity of the participants to earn an income, by increasing employment in four sectors through expansions in the labour-intensity of government funded infrastructure programmes. These sectors are:
  - **Infrastructure**: Increasing the labour-intensive construction, rehabilitation and maintenance of public infrastructure projects such as low volume roads, sidewalks, storm-water management, trenching, materials supply, etc.;
  - **Environmental**: Creating work opportunities in public environmental, agriculture and arts programs, such as "Working for water" (alien plant removal), "Working for wetlands", "Working for coast", tourism, Domestic waste collection and Agri-business initiatives;
  - **Social**: Creating work opportunities through the public sector social programs of “Early Childhood Development”, “Home Based Care”, etc.; and
  - **Economic**: Assisting in the development of small businesses and cooperatives utilizing government expenditure on goods and services such as catering, security, uniforms, cleaning, etc.
- While the target that was set for the EPWP in all sectors was a million jobs in five years, the infrastructure sector is seen as the area that has the largest employment generating potential, with a target of at least 500 000 work opportunities having been set. In each of the sectors, it is anticipated that labour-intensive projects will be initiated by National Departments, Provinces and Municipalities. No special budget exists for the EPWP, but is expected of each state actor to allocate a slice of its budget to the various sectors listed above with labour-intensive and small-scale activities in mind. Through preferential procurement and clever programming it is anticipated that the cumulative effect for a local economy of government budgets can be maximised. It is argued by the Depart of Public Works that the success of the programme will depend upon substantial training and capacity building within the sector. Interventions have been put in place as part of this sector plan to address training and capacity building needs.
- A key consideration in the programme is that a need must exist for the areas in which the participants are deployed. Another is that it must not replace existing jobs.

Comprehensive Rural Development Programme, 2009 (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform)

- Cabinet adopted the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP) in August 2009.
- Comprehensive, integrated and sustainable rural development has been put forward as one of the key priorities of Government. The aim with the focus on such development is to (1) address the deep poverty and destitution in many of the country’s rural areas, notably the former Bantustans, and (2) create sustainable rural communities throughout the country.
- In accordance with this view, the CRDP seeks to achieve social cohesion and development in rural communities through:
  - Coordinated and integrated broad-based agrarian transformation;
  - An improved land reform programme; and
  - Strategic investments in economic and social infrastructure in rural areas.
- A key component of the CRDP is the National Rural Youth Service Corps (NARYSEC) programme, which has already created nearly 10 000 employment opportunities. The programme entails that government:
  - Recruits four young people from each rural ward – with a built-in gender balance, and including people with disabilities;
  - Provides each beneficiary with a small income for two years, which must be shared with their families, and which is a condition of acceptance of participation in the programme; and
  - Provides training which begins with instilling discipline and a work ethic through the collaboration with the National Defence Force.
- The beneficiaries, in turn, then assist government with profiling rural communities to establish the real needs of these communities. At the end of two years, which includes skills development, the beneficiaries return to their communities and are supported to use their skills in establishing businesses with the goal of eventually employing others.
- The renewed focus on rural development and the CRDP marks a desire to break from previous initiatives that failed to deliver on the dire need for development in these areas. As such, it is a novel programme that needs success stories, not only to fuel development, but also to convince those that have grown sceptical about the prospects of rural development that it can be done. (The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform has expressed its wish to embark on evidence-led rural development, and in so doing, avoiding the trap of working merely on noble thoughts, dreams and aspirations.)
• The CMVPP presents an ideal opportunity to deliver on the need for genuine rural development and to start the process of changing the profile and perceptions of rural development.

Cooperatives Development Policy and Incentives Scheme, 2004 (Department of Trade and Industry)

• Cooperatives, as voluntary associations of people to serve/meet their common economic, social and/or cultural needs, have enjoyed wide support in government and community circles in post-1994 South Africa.

• In 2004, government published a policy which seeks to both assist and support emerging and established cooperatives. In this policy government reiterates its support of the movement and set out ways in which it will endeavour to support such enterprises and initiatives in cases where they could benefit disadvantaged groups and/or troubled/depressed geographic areas.

• It is also specified in the policy that government will prepare legislation to give statutory power to its support intentions as set out in the policy. It is also stated that it will (1) establish a fund to support cooperatives with technical assistance and capacity building, and (2) seek to provide preferential procurement for cooperatives and give them access to SMME tax incentives.

• Given that cooperatives are seen as key in Government’s attempt at ridding South Africa of its dualistic economy, the Department of Trade and Industry provided an incentive scheme for cooperatives in terms of which a cooperative could access a matching grant (90 state: 10 cooperative) not exceeding R300 000. The scheme has a number of requirements that prospective recipients have to comply with, such as that it has to be (1) in the emerging sector, rural- or semi-urban based, and (2) owned by a historically disadvantaged person. It is also stated that preference will be given to cooperatives that are owned by women, young people and persons with disabilities.

• The Cooperatives-movement and policy framework as provided for in the Policy and Incentives Scheme hold huge opportunities for the CMVPP and similar such projects in other parts of the country.

• In addition to the national policy and support, provincial governments and municipalities are generally highly supportive of cooperatives and activities that are conducive to economic and community development in a communal format.

Community Development Workers Programme, 2003 (Department of Cooperative Governance and the Department of Public Service and Administration)

• The notion of Community Development Workers (CDWs) was first mentioned officially (Cabinet Memorandum) in November 2003, and the programme launched in 2005.

• The “Handbook for Community Development Workers”, which was launched by the Ministry of Public Service and Administration (MPSA) in 2007, sets out what the roles and responsibilities of these workers are.

• The programme, the joint responsibility of the Department of Cooperative Governance and the Department of Public Service and Administration, requires participants to work across different levels of government to help people access the full range and best quality services available to them. These services do not only include social services, but also include programmes and possibilities to improve the skills of people and improve their opportunities to create their own jobs or to find employment. As noted in the handbook, “...CDWs will help people access information and services to set up community-based projects such as small business development projects”.

• In addition to this, the handbook specifies that CDWs are expected to liaise with communities in relation to the various programmes that can directly impact on the lives of communities such as rural development programmes and local economic development initiatives. It is also expected of CDWs to make communities aware of government programmes and initiatives that can facilitate community development. CDWs must also work within the framework provided by the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005, to strengthen intergovernmental relations.

• CDWs play an important part in disseminating information in the communities where they live and in ensuring that everyone benefits from programmes and services available to them.

• While there is a national CDW programme, CDWs are often appointed by provincial government departments and often also appointed by municipalities.

Robust and Inclusive Municipal Economies: Policy Guidelines for Implementing Local Economic Development in South Africa, 2005 (Department of Cooperative Governance)

• The 2005-guideline-document, although ‘old’, is the most recent statement on Local Economic Development. As such, the document indicates that it has been prepared on the back of the lessons learnt from the experiences during the first decade of “LED implementation” in the country.

• The Guidelines seek the establishment of a “single and integrated South African economy” that benefits all.

• The Guidelines clearly make a break with earlier forms LED that sought to “make isolated projects work”
The document stresses that “the central focus of government in implementing LED must be on creating an ideal environment for private sector investment through appropriate public sector investment and by supporting the retention, growth and development of enterprises be they private or cooperatives and whether they are small, medium or large”.

- The document specifies that enterprises that (1) create jobs, and (2) promote ecological sustainability and social development and Black Economic Empowerment, should be targeted, and that this focus/initiative should be supported by the procurement regime of municipalities. Municipalities are also instructed to use all the legal and policy tools at their disposal to facilitate economic growth through companies that demonstrate the desired qualities and that all their activities should be focused on patterns of ownership, supply and production in municipal economies.

- The guidelines stress the need for municipalities to use SEDA and training entities to assist them in developing and honing skills. It is, in this spirit stated that, “The idea is not for municipalities to necessarily run programmes themselves but to focus on establishing forums to build partnerships and to network with a range of stakeholders”.

- The district and metro-scale is seen as the ideal scale for developing regional strategies in which local municipalities (in the case of DMs) have to locate their LED endeavours.

- The guidelines stress the need to determine and exploit the competitive and comparative advantages of municipalities. Local governments, are, however, not seen as responsible for directly creating jobs, but rather for creating the conditions in which this can take place.

- The guidelines clearly state that LED is not to be incorrectly seen as small-scale community projects. Instead it is to be viewed as a wide, vibrant concept of what the full local economy can and should be. In this pursuit, access to finance, relevant skills development, connections with other government support and infrastructure development and social spending-programmes have to be maximized. Wise use of energy is also stressed.

- Finally the guidelines stress the need to focus on areas and sectors with potential in growing the economy and jobs. It also stresses the need to build viable, competitive economies and not weak economies behind protectionist barriers.

- LED has been, and still is a key construct and instrument in the arsenal of development planners seeking to grow local sustainable local economies, uplift communities and ensure a better quality of life for especially those living in rural areas.

- The CMVPP can become an example of ‘real LED’. Much of what has been done, is being done and envisaged, is fully supported by the LED policy framework as briefly sketched above.

### Limpopo Employment, Growth and Development Plan, 2009-2014

- The Limpopo Employment, Growth and Development Plan (LEGDP) is the outcome of a process to align the province’s growth and development direction with the election manifesto of the ANC. As such, it seeks to develop an economy in the province which is able to improve the quality of life of the people of the province by, amongst others:
  - The creation of decent jobs and sustainable livelihoods,
  - Erection of reliable health care infrastructure;
  - Building of houses of an acceptable standard;
  - Provision of social development;
  - Comprehensive rural development, food security and land reform; and
  - Fighting crime and corruption (p. 6 and 32-34).

- The LEGDP seeks to achieve these long-term development objectives through the collaboration by the collaboration of all the role-players in the government, private sector and society-based structures. It seeks to contribute to the economic debate in the province and the in the country by highlighting the policy imperatives that need to be addressed to promote growth and employment in a complex international and domestic economic environment (p.9).

- The Plan sees the most pressing problem facing the province as being the absence of sustained economic growth and job creation, which has disabled the province’s ability to improve the quality of life, reduce poverty and inequality, and improve the quality of life of the all the province’s people. In order to address this, it seeks to address structural imbalances and constraints that impede the province’s economy from developing to its full potential and fully utilising its “rich natural and...
human resources for the benefit of all. This it seeks to address by promoting sustainable livelihoods, the green economy, improving social conditions and alleviating poverty.

- The Plan sees the legacy of apartheid in the scale and persistence of unemployment and inadequate investment in human capital (leading to a shortage of suitably skilled workers), the low savings/investment rates in the case of capital and the limited Foreign Direct Investment in the province and the struggles with land reform and rural development efforts that have to reverse policies that over many decades nearly eliminated the small farming sector.

- The Plan highlights the enormous social grants have made to the livelihoods of households and the reduction of poverty in the province.

- With specific regard to the study area, the supply of water in the Giyani LM is highlighted as an area of deep concern (p. 58).

- The key action programmes in the Plan (p. 36-86) are:
  - An industrial development programme that focuses on priority growth sectors;
  - Mining and minerals beneficiation;
  - Enterprise development focusing on SMMEs and Cooperatives;
  - Regional economic development and integration;
  - Public infrastructure investment;
  - Water resource development and demand management;
  - Agriculture and rural development;
  - Education and skills development;
  - Health care development;
  - Safety and security enhancement;
  - Environmental and natural resources development;
  - Harnessing the green economy and the creation of green jobs:
  - Corporate governance; and
  - Developing ICT and innovation-enabled industries.

- Nearly all of these action programmes speak to the challenges in the Muyexe Village and the proposals as made by the community in the Charter towards addressing these.

**Limpopo Rural Development Strategy 2011-2016 (Draft 01) [Prepared September 2011]**

- The Department of Agriculture in the Province was tasked by the Office of the Premier to coordinate rural development programmes in the province, which resulted in the development of an integrated rural development strategy in the province. This strategy was the result of in-depth desktop research and a comprehensive consultative process with key stakeholders in the province and nationally.

- The strategy recognises the prevalence and importance of urban-rural linkages.

- It specifies the key areas of focus in rural development to be on poverty, inequality and the environment for the benefit of both humans and the environment.

- The Limpopo Province is described as largely rural.

- In accordance with the high-level interventions prioritised by the July 2011 Cabinet Lekgotla for the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, the key priority areas of the strategy are:
  - Scaling up in size the existing rural development programmes aimed at expanding agricultural production by small-scale farmers;
  - Extending core infrastructure to rural areas;
  - Increasing jobs and skills; and
  - Revitalising rural towns in order to develop the economic hubs (including university towns) and ensure the development of sustainable rural settlements (p. 12).

- It is emphasised that it is important to understand that agriculture is but one of the several interventions required for rural development. These were considered in the preparation in the strategy and are listed as opportunities such as tourism, manufacturing, human skills development, health care services, social capital, culture and institutional development, and mining information communication technologies (p. 13).

- Mining, tourism and agriculture are viewed as key areas of opportunity in the province.

- The key objectives of the Limpopo government in regarding agriculture in the Limpopo Growth and Development Strategy 2004-2014, are listed as including:
  - Tripling the current size of agriculture by 2015;
  - Increasing the value of agriculture through enterprise diversification;
  - Investing in water saving technologies; and
  - Adding value within the agro-value chain (p. 23).
• With regards to the study area, the Mopani DM is listed as having potential for “horticulture (fruit and vegetables) and forestry clusters, a red and white meat cluster and tourism” (p. 22-23).

• The key success factors required for the effective delivery of an integrated rural development programme in Limpopo include the following:
  o The promulgation of a Rural Development Act;
  o Political support and buy-in of all government departments and agencies;
  o Buy-in and active participation of civil society, rural poor and the private sector;
  o Institutional capacity to drive rural development strategy;
  o Sustainable use of natural resources;
  o Information and Communication Technology;
  o Road and Transport System;
  o Health Systems;
  o Educated, skilled and productive workforce;
  o Innovation;
  o Effective planning, integration and co-ordination of public services programmes;
  o Equity in terms of gender, race and age;
  o Adequate water supply;
  o Adequate financial allocation; and
  o Effective Public Private Partnerships (PPPs) (p. 32).

• The strategy seeks to ensure “an improved and sustainable quality of life for rural communities” (p. 33).

• The strategy is underpinned by the following values:
  o A people-centred approach;
  o Community participation and planning;
  o SMART partnerships; and
  o The recognition of Limpopo’s indigenous cultural resource base (p. 33).

• The key strategic goals of the strategy are the following:
  o Establish a Rural Development Coordinating Unit by March 2012;
  o Accelerate land reform as a trajectory to agrarian reform;
  o Manage the implementation of the Limpopo Skills Development Strategy to meet the skills needs in every sector of the rural economy;
  o Develop, strengthen and revitalize niche’ local economic initiatives through the creation of economic opportunities for local communities to harness locally based resources for viable projects and enterprise developments by 2016;
  o Facilitate and utilise Information Communication Technologies (ICTs) to accelerate development of rural communities by 2016;
  o To promote participatory research methods that will enhance community livelihoods;
  o Develop an outcomes based Empowerment Programme that targets state organs, community structures, households and individuals to promote the Cosmo-visions of the people of Limpopo by 2014; and
  o Develop and implement a sustainable environmental programme that anchors the Limpopo Integrated Rural Development Strategy (p. 36).

• The eight programmatic responses (p. 37-66) are derived from these eight goals.

• The importance of (1) improved intergovernmental coordination and alignment, (2) public-private partnerships and collaboration, and (3) partnering with Traditional Authorities at the highest level, in the implementation of the programmes and the realisation of the strategies, is emphasised (p. 66-67).

• Provision is made for the establishment of “Ward and Village Committees”, which will include Traditional Authorities, to ensure that communities are involved in the implementation of the strategy (p. 72).

• Trigger projects are provided for. In the case of the Mopani DM this is the “Sapekoe Tea Extraction Project” and a “functional foods production” project (p. 73).

• A series of “niche economic activities” are also listed, which were identified through in-depth research (p. 78). These do not target a specific DM.

• In its conclusion the Limpopo Integrated Rural Development Strategy is described as a “multidimensional, people-centred and community-driven approach to resolved rural poverty and underdevelopment, while creating a vibrant and sustainable quality of life for the targeted beneficiaries” (p. 79).
The improvements in basic service delivery are listed as key areas of success that were achieved in the DM over the last ten years since the DM came into existence (p. 8).

It is stated that the IDP was prepared with and through high levels of community participation (p. 8).

The IDP is viewed as a developmental plan for not only all of government, but also for the private sector and traditional leaders (p. 9).

It is noted in the IDP that: “At the core of the 2011/12 IDP is the challenge and commitment to (1) deepen local democracy, (2) enhance political and administrative leadership, (3) accelerate service delivery, (4) build a developmental local government, and (5) ensure that municipal planning and implementation are done in an integrated manner. All of which can only be attended to in an environment of cooperative governance between MDM and (1) the Local Municipalities in its area of jurisdiction and (2) provincial and national line departments” (p. 16).

The niche areas for economic development in the GGLM are identified as (1) Mopani worms; (2) the Shangoni gate; (3) abandoned farms; and (4) cultural values (p. 47).

It is noted that the worst serviced areas with regards to roads in the DM are in the Greater Tzaneen and Greater Giyani LMs (p. 62). It is noted that this provides an opportunity for EPEP labour-intensive road improvement in these areas. Public-Community partnerships are seen as important in this regard.

It is stated that most rural communities in the DM do not have access to waste removal services from LMs, with the resulting negative environmental and health results and implications (p. 81). It is indicated that none of the 93 villages in the GGLM are serviced by a municipal refuse removal service. (p. 81).

It is noted that, “according to SAPS in Mopani, there are not enough police officers in the district” (p. 100). The GGLM has the third highest crime level out of the five LMs in the DM. The three most significant crimes in the DM and the GGLM are theft, burglary and assault with the intent to inflict bodily harm (p. 101 and 106).

One of the strategic risks for the Mopani District is listed as the lack of interaction with the House of Traditional Leaders. It is stated that there is no MOU between the Mopani DM and the Local House of Traditional Leaders (p. 133).

The strategic priority areas of the IDP are aligned with the vision, priority areas and outputs of the national and provincial government and revolve around (1) improving community well-being, (2) growing the economy, (3) becoming financially viable, (4) ensuring a democratic and accountable organisation, (5) managing by making use of information/evidence, (6) planning for the future, (7) developing and maintaining infrastructure, (8) providing safe and clean water, (9) coordinating public transport systems and (10) developing entrepreneurial and intellectual capabilities (p. 153-168). These form the base for the IDP projects (p. 178-236).

With regards to the Giyani LM, the IDP states that “There are a number of factors impacting negatively on the economic growth of the LM, such as geographical location (distance to markets), shortage of skills, poor infrastructure, climatic conditions and diseases. Due to proximity to Mozambique and Zimbabwe through the Kruger National Park, the municipality experiences an influx of foreigners from Mozambique and Zimbabwe refugees who have a myriad of social needs, including land. Hence, the establishment of the Hlupekani informal settlement around Giyani, which was a previous ‘Refugees camp’” (i.e. it was settled by Mozambican refugees) (p. 35).

It is furthermore stated that “The Greater Giyani Local Municipality has a potential for tourism and conservation development due to the existing natural heritage sites through the area, mining, latent farming schemes, processing of natural products (Mopani worm and Marula fruit)” (p. 35).

It is listed that there are 44 land claims in process in the Greater Giyani LM spanning 1 410.1434 hectare in extent, and of which only one is in process, and 43 still need to be validated (p. 38). The unresolved land claims are seen as a burden on spatial development and the planning by the municipalities in the district (p. 38).

The Muyexe village is specifically mentioned in the section in which the various LMs in the DM are introduced and an overview of each provided (p. 35). It is stated that the Greater Giyani LM is “home to Muyexe village, the pivot point of the National Rural Development Programme pilot project in South Africa launched on 17/08/2009” (p. 35). The envisaged opening of the Shangoni gate close to the Muyexe village is also mentioned in this section (p. 35).

It is mentioned later in the IDP that the allocation of rural nodal status to the Greater Giyani LM “… could be expected to make a big difference to the Greater Giyani economy in the long term” (p. 46).

Muyexe and Muyexe North are mentioned as two of the most poverty-stricken communities in the GGM alongside three other villages, according to the provincial “War-room on poverty, 2009”-report (p. 46).
• The 32km gravel road from Mphambo to Mninginisi to Muyexe is listed as one of the “priority roads for upgrading from gravel to tar” (p. 63).
• The construction of the post office in the Muyexe village in the 2009/2010 year is noted (p. 77).
• Muyexe is noted as one of the areas in the DM worst affected by soil erosion (p. 86).

**Greater Giyani Municipality Reviewed IDP 2012/13**

• The vision of the municipality is “A municipality where environmental sustainability, tourism and agriculture thrive for economic growth” (cover page).
• It is noted in the Mayor’s Foreword that the municipality is “confident that through the IDP the municipality will be in a position to deliver services in line with constitutional standards” (p. 2).
• It is stated that the CBD of the Giyani town is locked in by Tribal Authority land and is as a result of this, growing inwards. Visible unstructured developments are seen as impacting negatively on the image of the town. It is stated that there is a need to revitalise the town and develop incentives to attract investment (p. 51).
• It is stated that the LM has 91 villages and 7 townships (p. 51). The villages are on average 35km away from the CBD and most of the roads in the LM are gravel (p. 52).
• In contrast to the figure in the MDM IDP (see above), it is stated that 18 633 hectares are under a land claim (p. 52). It is stated that of the 44 land claims that were received, 11 have as yet found to be valid, while the rest are still being investigated (p. 52).
• Informal settlements on proclaimed land (e.g. Hluphekani) are highlighted as a problem (p. 53 and 57).
• A series of environmental challenges (notably soil erosion and overgrazing) are listed (p. 57).
• It is noted that the demand for water in the villages “has increased” (p. 65).
• Littering and illegal dumping, especially in the rural areas, due to no LM system in these areas, are described as serious issues in the LM (p. 73).
• The existing municipal waste sites are also described as not meeting environmental standards (p. 73).
• It is noted that the economy of the LM is underpinned by agriculture, tourism, retail and transport (p. 89).
• The long distance away from major centres of the LM, poor infrastructure, a shortage of skills, climatic conditions and diseases are seen as hindrances on economic growth (p. 89).
• The LM is seen as having economic potential in mining, abandoned farming schemes, processing of natural products and natural heritage sites (tourism) (p. 89 and 230).
• The large tracts of agricultural land, the location on major road corridors and the low crime rates in the LM are seen as comparative advantages of the LM (p. 93).
• The growth opportunities in the LM are listed as “natural resources, tourism and agriculture” (p. 93). The close proximity to the Kruger Park is also seen as an opportunity for economic growth (p. 93).
• The strategic objectives of the IDP are:
  - To develop an effective spatial framework that promotes integrated and sustainable development;
  - To develop and retain the best human capital, effective and efficient administrative and operational support systems;
  - To develop sustainable infrastructure networks which promotes economic growth and improve quality of life;
  - To create an enabling environment for sustainable economic growth;
  - To improve financial management systems to enhance revenue base; and
  - To develop governance structures and systems that will ensure effective public consultation and organizational discipline (p. 114).
• It is stated that the LM has established a “Unit for Agriculture to ensure that the Agricultural Sector is strengthened and more jobs are created” (p. 241).
• With regards to Muyexe, the linkage road between Giyani town and the Muyexe Conference Centre is listed as a District Tar Road (p. 77) and the Shingwedzi-Muyexe road as a District Gravel Road (p. 78).
• The electrification of 178 units in Muyexe is listed as having taken place in in the 2011/12 financial year (p. 68).
• The police station at Muyexe is listed as one of the four satellite police stations in the LM (p. 82).
• The sport centre in Muyexe is listed as one of the municipality’s ten sport centres (p. 85).
• The Thusong centre in Muyexe is listed as one of three such centres in the LM. (p. 86).
• Reference is made to the allocation of nodal status to the Muyexe Village in 2009, which is a part of Ward 18 of the LM (p. 86). It is also stated that “the community of Muyexe identified 25 key priority issues for the CRDP to address”, which are then listed (p. 86). These range from water and roads to a shopping mall and the opening of the Kruger Gate (p. 86-87).
• It is stated that the Muyexe pilot programme will run for two years in the village under the leadership of the DRDRLR and that the department has added another 3 villages, which also form part of CRDP sites, and which are Thomo, Dingamanzi and Gonono, to the pilot (p. 87).
• It is stated under a section dealing with “comparative advantages” in the LM that “the pilot project at Muyexe is also an advantage to our economic growth” (p. 93).
• The opening of the Muyexe Gate at the Kruger Park, demarcation of 1 000 sites and an electrification project were identified as needs during the Feb 2012 public participation sessions (p. 109).
• The opening of a packaging plant, funded by the MDM, under the auspices of the DBSA, is listed as a project under “KPA 3: Infrastructure development and basic services” (p. 149).
• The provision of sanitation at a school in the village, the construction of four classrooms, toilets and a fence at Muyexe are listed as projects under the Department of Education-table of projects (p. 175-176).
• Upgrading of the Muyexe clinic is listed under the Health Department’s set of projects (p. 179).
• The “Muyexe poultry project” is listed under the Department of Agriculture table of projects (p. 179).
• The development of the Muyexe conference centre is listed under “National Department: (void)” as a project (p. 181).
• A water reticulation project at Muyexe is listed as a MDM project (p. 181).
• The Muyexe Sports Centre is listed under capital projects and is to be funded out of MIG funds (p. 226).

Table 26: A Summary of National Government Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>National Sentiment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The new wave of National Policy Documents responds to the prevalent dire economic conditions in the country, and places job creation at the forefront of the economic policy of the country (i.e. New Growth Path, National Development Plan). One of the main driving forces of National Government is therefore to stimulate economic growth by increasing employment (from 13 million in 2010 to 24 million in 2030), and reducing poverty (Raise per capita income from R 50 000 in 2010 to R 120 000 by 2030). In terms of rural development, the plight of rural communities has been emphasised in a number of policy documents. Generally, rural communities have limited access to basic services and the economic mainstream. In general, the National sphere of government strives towards “an inclusive rural economy” where rural communities can participate in economic activities. The government is committed to improving the overall livelihood of rural communities as reflected in NDPs spatial vision for rural South Africa as “the development of vibrant, productive rural communities that create and keep wealth in their areas and also provide benefit to the nation” and “vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing towards food security for all” (DAFF).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prioritised Government spending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP – first draft released in 2003, second edition released in 2006) proposed a new line of thinking and in a sense leveraged a mind-shift in the way investment and spending is prioritised. The NSDP proposed that within our country’s limited financial resources, government spending large economic infrastructure investments should be focused in areas with economic development potential. This line of thinking created a ‘spill-over effect’ and is reflected in the bulk of the national department’s investment strategies. Almost all national documents reflect the realisation that to invest and develop each and every area that is deemed “rural” in South Africa is not sustainable and that a “nodal development approach” based on economic development potential should be pursued. In terms of rural development, the National Development Plan therefore distinguishes between three types of interventions required based on the varying opportunities of each rural settlement area (p. 218):
• “High Economic Potential areas”: Expand irrigated agriculture (according to research the 1.5 million ha can be expanded with an additional 500 000ha), supplemented by dry-land production;
• “Some Economic Potential areas”: Support non-agricultural activities i.e. agro-processing, tourism and small enterprises; and |

GAUTENG RURAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN
• “Low Economic Potential areas”: The provision of basic services (health care and education) should be prioritised. The development of human capital is therefore encouraged.

## Rural Differentiations

Traditionally, rural areas were perceived as being “homogenous” (“typical rural conditions”) in nature and planning solutions in rural areas was generically approached on a “one-size-fits-all” basis. Present day thinking suggests that each rural area is unique and should therefore be approached in differentiated means. A rural typology or classification system is therefore required in recognition of the multi-facetted dimensions of “rural” and requires an in-depth understanding of the rural attributes of each rural area.

## Issues

There is a general lack of coherent definition of the concept “rural” in the South African context. The Comprehensive Rural Development Framework 2007 of the DRDLR, which constitutes guidelines for the development of rural areas in South Africa, also confirms that, “there is no legal definition for “rural areas”. In South Africa a distinction is only made between “urban”, “peri-urban” and “rural”. The Rural Development Framework, adopted by the government in 1997, defined rural areas as “sparsely populated areas which people farm or depend in natural resources, including villages and small towns that are dispersed throughout these areas. In addition, they include large settlements in the former homelands, created by apartheid removals which depend for their survival on migratory labour and remittances. The lack in standardisation is mainly based on the misunderstanding in the spatial dynamics of rural areas as mentioned in the preceding paragraph.

In addition to the above, despite the fact that urban agriculture is supported by a number of government departments, there is no strategy, policy or guideline document that guides urban and peri-urban agriculture. There is therefore a need for a strategy or policy relating to urban and peri-urban agriculture that coordinates and enhances the role of agriculture in urban and peri-urban livelihoods (i.e. fringes of towns and cities). This is particularly important in the context of Gauteng that has for instance been excluded from the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme due to the fact that Gauteng largely constitute “urban”. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries moreover emphasises that the lack of integrated spatial planning is hampering the growth of the sector and the success of support programmes and other interventions made by government. The absence of integrated spatial information therefore limits planning and results in ineffective project development.

## Trends and Themes

- National food security is a key priority on the agenda of national government as reflected in a large number of programmes, documents, strategies and plans;
- Tourism and agriculture are identified as the economic potential pillars for rural development in South Africa;
- It is proposed that more labour-absorbing activities across the main economic sectors should be targeted, more specifically the “agricultural value chain” and the “green economy”;
- There is a strong focus on support and development of agro-processing industries;
- Strong support is expressed for, and a strong focus placed on the production of biofuels. The focus is, however, often on other provinces when it comes to agriculture, and not on the Gauteng Province;
- Proposed transformation and restructuring of the agricultural sector involves a broad-base growth of the “missing middle”. The “missing middle” refers to small-scale commercial sectors operating alongside the commercial sector and subsistence sector. Various national policy documents and programmes promote and support the development of smallholder schemes to support small scale farming activities; and
- Rural development is largely dependent on the development of rural infrastructure, specifically transport infrastructure.

### Possible Role players/ Development and Land Reform

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possible Role Players</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Industrial Development Corporation (IDC)</td>
<td>Financial assistance for Agro-processing through the Agro-Processing Linkage Scheme (APL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Department of Trade and Industry</td>
<td>Financial support for Agro-processing and possible tourism projects</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 27: Gauteng Department Of Sport, Arts, Culture And Recreation Craft Strategic Framework 2007 – 2012

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
<th>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Published in 2008, runs till 2012.</td>
<td>• The Gauteng SACRCSF provides a framework for the development of the Craft sector between 2007 and 2012. It identifies four categories of producer enterprises in the Craft sector: (1) those that are established and have been stable over time (30%); (2) young micro-enterprises with the potential to grow and create employment (30-40%); (3) a survivalist base operating at very low income levels; and (4) designer-makers with primarily stable and established micro-enterprises employing approximately eight people per enterprise (p. 3).</td>
<td>• Key issues and focus areas identified by the Strategic Framework are: (1) access to resources; (2) market access; (3) marketing strategies; (4) skills development; (5) engagement with the design sector; (6) enterprise development initiatives; and (7) co-ordination between value chain participants (p. 3-4).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The primary vehicle for the delivery of interventions identified in the Strategic Framework is the establishment of the Gauteng Craft and Design Development Centre, and of specific value to the land suitability analysis, is the establishment of related satellite craft development centres (p. 4).</td>
<td>• In order to improve access to resources to improve product quality and production efficiencies production hub spaces and satellites in various local government areas will be developed, which will provide and facilitate access to production space, ICT, raw material, transportation and production logistics and financial support in partnership with agencies such as TEP, GEP, SEDA and the DTI (p. 5).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• In order to improve access to resources to improve product quality and production efficiencies (p. 23-24); (2) facilitate market access and growth (p. 24-25); (3) increase consumption of craft products in the province (p. 26); (4) improve skills levels of emerging and established producers (p. 27); (5) improve design, innovation and product development skills (p. 27-28); (6) move existing survivalist enterprises onto a more sustainable development trajectory and raise income levels (p. 28-30); (7) improve efficiency and efficacy of government and other support services (p. 30-31).</td>
<td>• Furthermore the Strategic Framework outlines a whole range of interventions to (1) improve access to resources to improve product quality and production efficiencies (p. 23-24); (2) facilitate market access and growth (p. 24-25); (3) increase consumption of craft products in the province (p. 26); (4) improve skills levels of emerging and established producers (p. 27); (5) improve design, innovation and product development skills (p. 27-28); (6) move existing survivalist enterprises onto a more sustainable development trajectory and raise income levels (p. 28-30); (7) improve efficiency and efficacy of government and other support services (p. 30-31).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Proposals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principles/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposal</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

• We need to determine if satellite craft development centres have as yet been established, and if so, where.
Table 28: Department Of Sport, Arts, Culture And Recreation Plan Revised Five Year Strategic Plan 2009 – 2014

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Current Strategic Plan: 2009.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The Strategic Plan was assessed along with GDSACR’s Annual Report 2011/12.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The DSACR Strategic Plan provides an outline of the programmes in place between 2009 and 2014. The DSACR sees its roles as the following: (1) improving social services; promoting the overall well-being; (2) maximising individual family and community potential and to create a just and caring society, founded on the principle of social cohesion; (3) contributing to the Province’s Economic growth path; (4) promoting sustainable livelihoods; (5) enhancing the value of the tourism sector; (6) supporting SMMEs; (7) skills development; (8) increased BBBEE; and (9) promoting the Global City region concept and engaging with NEPAD (2009: p. v).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The strategic goals of the DSACR are to: (1) enhance the implementation of integrated and sustainable sport, arts, culture and recreation programmes; (2) identify, develop and nurture sport and artistic talent for competitive and major events; (3) identify and preserve heritage including the promotion of national days and symbols; (4) inculcate a culture of reading and lifelong learning; (5) preserve and make accessible the archival records of the province; and (6) contribute to the developmental state and good governance (2009: p. 37).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principles/Policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The DSACR makes little reference to rural areas except for stating that it will provide, upgrade and maintain sports, arts and culture facilities in rural communities and promote an arts programme on recyclable agricultural waste. It does, however, state that 51 decentralised ‘hubs’ have been established in Gauteng but do not provide their location. These ‘hubs’ are multi-purpose centres where sport and recreation activities take place. Although not explicitly stated, it can be assumed that many of these hubs are located in or close to rural areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The DSACR sees tourism as a sector that should contribute considerably to Gauteng’s economic performance and will support the development of the sector with regard to supporting SMME, skills development and BBBEE initiatives. As the ‘Rural Economic Activities and Related Settlement’ land category specifically focuses on linking up with and developing tourism potential in rural areas, it can be assumed that the DSACR Strategic Plan supports this type of initiative.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Three craft hubs have been established according to the 2011/12 Annual Report (p. 12) in (1) the Sedibeng District Municipality focusing on Glass Beads projects; (2) Mogale City for the Ceramics projects; and (3) the City of Tshwane, focusing on Recycling and Local Market Access Projects. The exact location of these Craft Hubs is not provided, but might be located close or in rural areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The Annual Report makes reference to various projects/programmes in rural Gauteng related to sport, recreation and craft – these seem to be linked to the ‘hubs’ as outlined in the previous section.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The project team needs to locate the 51 Hubs developed by the GDSACR.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 29: Bontle Ke Botho Cleaning And Greening Report 2005

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• 2005</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The Bontle ke Botho programme serves as a vehicle to implement the commitments contained in Agenda 21 and the Johannesburg Plan of Implementation emanating from the World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The campaign encourages and rewards the efforts of local authorities and schools in cleaning and greening their immediate surroundings. The aim of ‘Bontle ke Botho’ cleaning and Greening campaign is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
to mobilise communities to prioritise actions that will improve the local environment.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principles/Policy**

- Not applicable.

**Proposals**

- The document makes no specific proposals relevant to the project.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Not applicable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Table 30: Strategy For Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment By The Gauteng Provincial Government (DRAFT)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No date provided</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>According to the GPG, the objective of the BBBEE Strategy is to substantially increase the GPG’s impact on BBBEE, and consequently generate economic benefit and growth for the province as a whole. The Strategy provides greater clarity on the implementation of BBBEE and aligns GPG activities to the Broad-based BEE Act 53 of 2003, the DTI Codes of Good Practice on BBBEE and transformation charters (p. 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The DTI Draft Scorecard of June 2005 is identified to be used in GPG when measuring the performance of its suppliers with rural development mentioned in two instances: (1) with regard to skills development, bonus points will be given for skills development in rural areas; and (2) with regard to social development and industry specific initiatives, initiatives directly contributing towards job creation in rural areas will be considered for bonus points (p. 29-30).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- Ten priority interventions are outlined in the BBBEE Strategy in accordance with their potential significant impact on BBBEE, and their ability to drive economic benefit in the province as a whole. The following interventions (of the ten) link directly to rural development and land reform (p. 5-6):
  - Access to land and property ownership through targeted interventions to address skewed ownership patterns;
  - Local economic development through land use initiatives, entrepreneurial development and investment in under resourced areas with economic potential;
  - Access to housing, basic infrastructure and social services such as education and health, enables increased levels of economic activity in under resourced areas;
  - Programmes in primary, secondary, further and tertiary education aimed at bridging the skills gap in the province and equipping people with the skills necessary to participate meaningfully in the economy; and
  - Partnerships with the relevant sector leveraging off the GDS platform and relevant sector charters in the priority growth sectors to accelerate BBBEE and other socio-economic outcomes.

- Overall the BBBEE Strategy focuses on supporting micro enterprise, small business development in high-growth sectors and the growth of SMEs owned and managed by black people and black women in particular, the youth, the disabled and cooperatives. It will support and assist with local economic development and land reform programmes which are inline with the BBBEE strategy.

**Proposals**

Not applicable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No specific action required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OVERVIEW OF DOCUMENT CONTENT

- Total budget: Provincial budget: 77.309 billion (Gauteng Provincial Budget Booklet 2013/2014).
- According to the Budget Speech (Gauteng Budget Speech 2013: 7):
  - The budget under ‘Farmer Support and Development’ grows from R114 million in 2013/14 to R139.6 million in 2015/16;
  - Development and maintenance of community good gardens in most of the poorest 50 wards: R14.2 million is allocated to this output during 2013/14;
  - In partnership with the Rand Water Foundation a agro-processing pack house, the Maize Triangle Projects, will be constructed and will provide production inputs in relation to the Bantu Bonke Agricultural projects in 2013/14, an amount of R21.6 million has been set aside for this; and
  - During 2013/14 the Department of Roads and Transport will upgrade five rural roads in Nooitgedacht and Rust de Winter in Bronkhorstspruit, Hammanskraal and Winterveld in Tshwane and Magaliesburg in Krugersdorp.
- According to the Gauteng Estimate of Provincial Revenue and Expenditure of 2013/14, the Department of Agriculture and Rural Development’s total appropriation amounts to R553.6 million, a growth of 12 per cent when compared with the 2012/13 main appropriation of R493.9 million. Over the 2013/14 MTEF the Department received additional funding of R67.2 million under equitable share. This caters for improvement in conditions of service, the migration of personnel and farmer support (permanent appointment of extension officers). In the outer years of the 2013 MTEF, the total budget grows by an annual average rate of 7 percent to R600.5 million in 2014/15 and R637.3 million in the 2015/16 financial year. The CASP grant grows by 16 per cent from R48 million in 2012/13 main appropriation to R56 million in 2013/14 to repair agricultural infrastructure damaged by floods. The Department will strengthen its processes and capacity to roll out priority projects funded by conditional grants (GEPRE 2013: 429).
- The budget increased by 12 per cent from R493.9 million in the 2012/13 main budget to R553.6 million in
- 2013/14 to fund, amongst other priorities, the permanent appointment of extension officers thus promoting farmer support and to accommodate inflation related increases to compensation of employees. The Agriculture and Rural Development Programme receives the largest share of the budget (46 per cent) in order to assist farmers with mechanisation inputs and to establish agri-parks. All the conditional grants were allocated to Programme 2: Agriculture and Rural Development to provide farmers with infrastructure, production inputs and flood relief. The conditional grant funds also ensure the clearing of alien vegetation on agricultural land and fund the provision of extension services to farmers. The Environmental Affairs Programme receives the second largest share in order to conduct biodiversity programmes on nature reserves, issue EIAs, implement waste management and for the cleaning and greening of the province thus improving the sustainable use of the environment (GEPRE 2013: 431).
- The total appropriation escalates again by an annual average rate of 7 per cent totalling R600.5 million in 2014/15 and R637.3 million in the 2015/16 financial year to accommodate additional infrastructure on nature reserves. The goods and services budget increased by 11 per cent from R192 million in 2012/13 to R212.4 million in 2013/14 as a result of agricultural support services to farmers and to ensure adherence to regulatory requirements. Goods and services grow again by an annual average of 5 per cent over the two outer years of the 2013 MTEF (GEPRE 2013: 431-432).
- Transfers to higher education institutions decrease from R3.9 million in 2012/13 to R2.4 million in the 2013/14 financial year because of the reprioritization of funds. However, priority research projects will continue as well as the implementation of the biotechnology strategy despite the reduction in funds allocated to higher education institutions (GEPRE 2013: 432).
• Under departmental agencies and accounts, an amount of R6.8 million will be transferred to the Agricultural
• Research Council (ARC) for research projects in the 2013/14 financial year. This amount increases to R7.6 million in the outer year of the 2013 MTEF (GEPRE 2013: 432).
• In the 2013/14 financial year an amount of R21.6 million will be transferred to the Rand Water Foundation under public corporations and private enterprises. The transfer to the Rand Water Foundation will fund the removal of alien vegetation at Mogale City and Zuurbekom small holdings, the construction of an agro-processing pack house, support to the Maize Triangle Project and the provision of production inputs for the Bantu Bonke Agricultural project. The allocation to the Rand Water Foundation under public corporations and private enterprises grows slightly over the medium term totalling R22 million in 2015/16 (GEPRE 2013: 432).
• With regard to funds transfer to local government: In the 2013/14 financial year, the budget for transfers to local government totals R5.4 million. This amount increases to R5.7 million and decreases to R5.6 million for 2014/15 and 2015/16 respectively. Under Category A transfers, R2.6 million will be transferred to the City of Johannesburg for the implementation of the Klipspruit and Jukskei River clean up. The outputs in relation to the river clean up includes the creation of temporary jobs, removal of waste, reeds and grass from the river, skills development and pollution awareness campaigns. In 2013/14, under Category B a total of R2.8 million will be transferred to Emfuleni, Lesedi and Merafong for the implementation of alien vegetation eradication projects. The alien vegetation removal projects will also contribute to job creation and skills development. These projects will continue over the 2013 medium term with the budget growing by an average rate of 3.5 per cent in the outer years of the 2013 MTEF period (GEPRE 2013:432-433).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABLITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle**

• The Agriculture and Rural Development Programme receives the largest share of the budget (46 per cent) in order to assist farmers with mechanisation inputs and to establish agri-parks. All the conditional grants were allocated to Programme 2: Agriculture and Rural Development to provide farmers with infrastructure, production inputs and flood relief. The conditional grant funds also ensure the clearing of alien vegetation on agricultural land and fund the provision of extension services to farmers (GEPRE 2013: 431).

**Proposals**

• According to the Gauteng Budget Speech during 2013/14 (p. 7) the Department of Roads and Transport will upgrade five rural roads in Nootgedacht and Rust de Winter in Bronkhorstspruit, Hammanskraal and Waterveld in Tshwane and Magaliesburg in Krugerdorp. Although the description of these roads seems to be a bit off (Magaliesburg is not in Krugerdorp) these roads fall inside the proposed zones and it can be assumed will support the proposed land use categories. Nootgedacht falls inside Zone 2, Rust de Winter seems to fall inside Zone 1, Hammanskraal falls inside Zone 1, Magaliesburg falls inside Zone 8.

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No specific actions are required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 32: Gauteng Integrated Cooperatives Development Strategy Implementation Framework 2010

**YEAR AND STATUS**

• The framework is the follow-up to a cooperatives policy developed in the province in 2007.
• The Gauteng Integrated Cooperatives Development Strategy Implementation Framework was published in 2010.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

• The broad objectives of the GCDS are to: (1) ensure that existing policies and strategies are in harmony with national policies; (2) target the unemployed and poor in particular women, youth and the disables in order to ensure an even spread of the benefits; (3) ensure BBBEE; (4) support the development of cooperatives sector alongside the public and private sector; and (5) clarify government’s role and approach in the establishment of cooperatives.
### IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

**Principles/Policy**

- Not specifically relevant to the project, but supportive to cooperatives, which would be active in rural areas in the GP.

**Proposals**

- Not specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- No actions are required.

---

#### Table 33: Department Of Community Safety Strategic Plan 2010 – 2015

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The document (Draft Two) was adopted in 2009.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference is made to a Department of Community Safety Strategic Plan 2009-2014 in other documents. However, at the time of assessment (April 2013) no such document could be found.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The principle aim of the Gauteng Department of Community Safety is to monitor the conduct of law enforcement agencies in the province and to oversee their effectiveness and efficiency.
- The Community Safety Strategic Plan begins with a comprehensive overview of the strengths and opportunities present in the current national and internal organisational context with regard to community safety.
- The strategic goals of the Department (as informed by its strengths and weaknesses) are structured around four programmes: (1) Safety Promotion Programme; (2) Civilian Oversight Programme; (3) Traffic Management Programme; and (4) Corporate Communications (p. 18).
- The Department takes a holistic view of community safety, not just focussing on policing and crime prevention but also emphasising and addressing education and the empowerment of citizens through community safety initiatives and improving the relationships between communities and law enforcement agencies.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principles/Policy**

- The strategic plan does not directly address safety in rural areas. However, during the implementation of any Rural Development and Land Reform Plan/Strategy the Departments’ assistance and cooperation will be needed to ensure the safety of beneficiaries of the plan/strategy.

**Proposals**

- No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- Department to be consulted with during the implementation phase of the plan/strategy.

---

#### Table 34: Department Of Community Safety Strategic Plan 2010 – 2015

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The document (Draft Two) was adopted in 2009.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference is made to a Department of Community Safety Strategic Plan 2009-2014 in other documents. However, at the time of assessment (April 2013) no such document could be found.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The principle aim of the Gauteng Department of Community Safety is to monitor the conduct of law enforcement agencies in the province and to oversee their effectiveness and efficiency.
• The Community Safety Strategic Plan begins with a comprehensive overview of the strengths and opportunities present in the current national and internal organisational context with regard to community safety.
• The strategic goals of the Department (as informed by its strengths and weaknesses) are structured around four programmes: (1) Safety Promotion Programme; (2) Civilian Oversight Programme; (3) Traffic Management Programme; and (4) Corporate Communications (p. 18).
• The Department takes a holistic view of community safety, not just focussing on policing and crime prevention but also emphasising and addressing education and the empowerment of citizens through community safety initiatives and improving the relationships between communities and law enforcement agencies.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principles/Policy**

• The strategic plan does not directly address safety in rural areas. However, during the implementation of any Rural Development and Land Reform Plan/Strategy the Departments’ assistance and cooperation will be needed to ensure the safety of beneficiaries of the plan/strategy.

**Proposals**

• No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

• Department to be consulted with during the implementation phase of the plan/strategy.

---

**Table 35: Department Of Community Safety Annual Report 2011/2012**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

• 2012

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

• The Annual Report provides an overview of the overall performance of the Department of Community Safety. The focus of the Department over the period under review has been on the performance of the SAPS, especially at station level. As a result there was a focus on the promotion of good relationships between the police and the community and the establishment of Community Police Forums (CPFs) as well as education initiatives regarding community safety measures and the abuse of alcohol and drugs and its link to crime (p. 17-19).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principles/Policy**

• The report makes reference to the development and implementation of rural safety plans, according to report the target was not met and the task was outsourced in the last quarter of the financial year (p. 46). No detailed information is provided regarding the aim or structure of the rural safety plans, however it would be important to consider these plans during the implementation phase of any plan or strategy.

**Proposals**

• Rural Safety Plans were developed in three police stations (p. 73): Devon, Hammanskraal and Bronkhorstspuit. No reference is made to the success of these plans.
• Devon is located in Rural Zone 4 and Bronkhorstspuit in Rural Zone 2 as identified in the Draft LSM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

• Depending on the outcome of the rural safety plans, their location and structure might need to be taken into consideration. Could not source documentation on the ‘rural safety plans’ on the internet in April 2013.
Table 36: Gauteng Comprehensive Rural Development Strategy 2009 – 2014

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• 2010. Not sure about the status of this document: the only version available online is a Word document.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• According to the GCRDS, the objectives of rural development are (1) increase in production and productivity; (2) equity with regard to access to opportunities to earn income, access to public services and access to productive inputs; (3) gainful employment; (4) people’s participation in the development process; and (5) ecological balance (p. 9).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The GCRDS hinges on the seven pillars: (1) promotion of sustainable land reform in Gauteng; (2) support of rural infrastructure development, access to services and sustainable livelihoods; (3) access to sufficient food security for all; (4) job creation linked to skills training and capacity building; (5) sustainable use of natural resources and protection of the environment; (6) good governance; and (7) risks and vulnerability (p. 34).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• According to the GCRDS: “Rural development is understood to be multi-dimensional, encompassing improved provision of services, enhanced opportunities for income generation, improved physical infrastructure, social cohesion and physical security within rural communities. Rural development places emphasis on facilitating change in rural environments to enable poor people to earn more, invest in themselves and their communities, contribute towards maintenance of the infrastructure key to their livelihoods, in short to identify opportunities and act on them” (p. 10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• This is in line with the rationale behind the identification of the three types of land categories as they have been developed to respond to the different needs of the beneficiaries to enhance their opportunities for income generation and the development of sustainable communities. Furthermore the GCRDS emphasises the fact that “in order to achieve rural development, the linkage between rural and nearly small towns and urban centres is crucial” (p. 11) and focuses on improving the linkages (physical, economic, social and technological) between rural areas and urban centres. With regard to the three types of land identified, these linkages have been incorporated into the decision making process as a key element of the rural development strategy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The GCRDS goes on to define ‘rural’ as “places in which human settlement and infrastructure are limited and the resulting physical landscape is primarily agriculture...rural people usually live in farmsteads or settlements of 5-10 000 persons” (p. 10-11).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• As a Comprehensive Rural Development Strategy, the whole document is relevant to the development of Gauteng Rural Development and Land Reform plans. However with regard to the identification of suitable land and the identified three land categories that had been developed the following elements of the GCRDS are crucial:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Promotional of sustainable land reform in Gauteng (p. 34-36):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• This section of the strategy makes specific reference to reviewing the land reform product and acquisition approaches for greater effectiveness and to ensure that the land is used optimally and that the match between beneficiaries and land are well planned and strategic. Beneficiaries are divided into five categories so as to create development pathways appropriate to different target categories. These categories are (p. 35-36).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Landless households – those seeking land for small-scale subsistence purposes, with or without settlement, including rights-based applicants such as farm dwellers;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Commercial-ready subsistence producers – those capable of a more commercial focus but need land and support, including rights-based applicants such as farm dwellers;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Expanding commercial smallholders – those already farming commercially at a small scale and with an aptitude to expand but constrained by land and other resources;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Well-established black commercial farmers – those already farming on a reasonable scale but disadvantaged by location or other resources and with the potential to become large-scale commercial farmers; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Financially capable, aspirant black commercial farmers – established businesspeople who aspire to expand into commercial agriculture and who will be part-time farmers. These categories will be able to fit into the three land categories identified.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This section of the strategy also makes reference to projects and priorities that can be catered to, such as (1) establishing business initiatives, rural and
Support of rural infrastructure development, access to services and sustainable livelihoods:
The GCRDS emphasises the development of new and the rehabilitation of existing infrastructure in rural areas (p. 37):

- Improving or developing economic infrastructure such as Roads, Railways, Dipping Tanks, Milking parlours, community gardens, production/marketing Stalls, fencing for agriculture, storage warehouses, distribution and transport networks, rural electrification, communication networks (land lines, cell phones, radio, TV, etc), irrigation schemes for small scale farmers, water harvesting, water basin and water shed management systems (dams etc.), post Offices and internet cafes and rural shopping malls.
- Improving or developing social infrastructure such as communal sanitation and ablation systems, showers, toilets, etc. for improved health, access to resourced health clinics, sports and recreation facilities especially for women and youth development, rural libraries for developing a reading nation, rehabilitation and development of schools as Centres of Excellence, community halls and museums and ABET centres for capacity building and appropriate skills development”

- Job creation linked to skills training and capacity building (p. 39-44):
  - The GCRDS formulated a Job Creation Model mainly premised on the Expanded Public Works Programme’s Phase 2 principles. This model could support job creation in communities situated in two of the identified land categories: ‘Rural Economic Activities and Related Settlements’ and ‘Small-Scale Agriculture-Based Rural Settlement.

Proposals

- No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- Incorporate and refer to the five beneficiary categories mentioned above.

Table 37: Department Of Sport, Art, Culture And Recreation Creative Industries Implementation Strategy Framework

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No date is provided, but reference is made to outcomes from 2011, thus it can be assumed that the document was published in 2012.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Implementation Strategy Framework starts with an overview of the implementation of all the relevant strategies created since and based on the Creative Industry Development Framework of the Gauteng Provincial Government. According to the Implementation Strategy Framework, both rural development and community-led economic development are largely absent from the majority of the strategies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The document moves on to provide implementation interventions to address based on the Creative Industry Development Framework for the Department of Sports, Arts, Culture and Recreation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Implementation Strategy Framework puts forward six interventions to improve the implementation of the Creative Industry Development Framework, with ‘Intervention 5: Cultural Planning at Community Settlement.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gauteng Rural Development Plan 54
Level’ (p. 32) of specific relevance to rural development.

- These geographically specific cultural plans use the asset base approach to arts and culture planning and programme development. Its focuses on building on existing talents, specific creative sector assets, and other general resources in communities. This approach is in line with the land category ‘Rural Economic Activities and Related Settlement’, and its approach of linking up with and expanding existing tourism potential. According to the Implementation Strategy Framework communities will be chosen on the basis either of existing tourism opportunities such as Cullinan, Magaliesburg (falling in Zone 1 and 8 respectively), parts of Soweto, Mamelodi and Sedibeng; or on the basis of cultural infrastructure being developed such as around Soweto theatre or in small or rural communities such as Westonaria. According to the Implementation Strategy Framework communities should have already been identified and the programme launched and implemented, however upon reviewing the DSACR’s Annual Performance Plan for 2012/2013 no mention was found of this intervention (p. 32).

Proposals

- No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- It would be advisable to find out of the ‘Cultural Planning at Community Level’ intervention is being implemented and if so what communities have they identified.

---

**Table 38: Gauteng Provincial Creative Industries Development Framework 2005**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- 2005

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The purpose of the Gauteng Provincial Creative Industries Development Framework (GCIDF) is to (1) develop creative industries to maximise their contribution to the economy, community development and urban regeneration; (2) provide a coordinating framework for investment and implementation in the province; and (3) explicitly align creative industries activities with the Gauteng Growth and Development Strategy (p. 6).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- Rural development is only mentioned in an ad hoc way, and the strategy does not specifically focus on rural areas in isolation or as part of the wider creative industry. It can, however, be assumed that the strategies outlined such as ‘creative cluster development’, ‘creative workforce development’ and ‘supporting creative communities’ will be crucial when rural development and land reforms plans/strategies are being implemented (in this case specifically types such as ‘Rural Economic Activities and Related Settlement’) as means of supporting and strengthening those initiatives.

- ‘Creative Cluster Development’ is a ‘Finance and Business Support Initiative’ which structures its activities around developing expertise in training, mentoring and advice based in already existing Gauteng institutions such as Multi-Purpose Community Centres – it can thus be assumed that these Multi-Purpose Community Centres could support the creative industries in rural areas (p. 20).

Proposals

- No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- According to the framework, Multi-Purpose Community Centres also provide support for creative industries. Identifying where such centres are, might thus be important for the ‘Rural Economic Activities and Related Settlement’ land category, even though the proximity to these centres would be advantageous for any of the land categories.
Table 39: Department Of Health And Social Development Strategic Plan 2009 – 2014

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>2009, current Strategic Plan.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</td>
<td>The document provides an overview of the programmes to be initiated between 2009 and 2014. The DHSD takes its cue from the Millennium Development Goals and prioritize (1) the reduction of maternity, child and infant mortality; (2) improving TB outcomes; and (3) preventing new HIV infections and expanding care to those living with HIV and AIDS.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Social Development initiatives of the DHSD are informed by the Gauteng Social Development Strategy which places children, youth, women, disabled and the elderly at the centre of its development efforts through promoting a caring society, offering social protection and investing in human and social development.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS</td>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>No specific emphasis is placed on health and social development in the rural parts of Gauteng as a separate or specific area of focus. However, the limited access to health and social development services in rural and informal settlements is mentioned and addressed in various plans, activities or focus areas. These are as follows:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>o In the ‘Key plans and Activities’ developed to reach the Millennium Development Goals, Target 7: “Have halted by 2015, and begin to reverse the spread of HIV and AIDS” the reduction of cost for rural transport to schools is mentioned as a ‘Key plan and activity’ (p. 39).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>o Rural/peri-urban areas are mentioned in the DHSD’s ‘Measures planned to overcome risk’ of a lack of access to Primary Health Care (PHC) and states that incentives will be provided for rural/peri-urban nurses (p. 67).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>o The DHSC states that it will expand the Early Childhood Development programme, targeting rural areas and informal settlements in order to promote the survival, growth, development and protection of young children whilst remaining in their families (p. 118).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>o In the ‘Employment Equity Implementation Plan 2009-2014’ under the deliverable of ‘Retention of Skills’ the monitoring of the implementation of ‘Rural Allowance scarce skills for Clinical Staff’ is mentioned but not expanded on (This is a national initiative) (p. 174).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>o With regard to emergency medical services the DHCS’s desired standard for response times in rural areas are 40 minutes (p. 179).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>o With regard to the Social Development ‘Service Delivery Improvement Plan 2009-2014’ the ‘Decentralisation of services to all communities in Gauteng’ is not up to standard, with an overconcentration of staff in urban areas thus limiting the services provided in informal and semi-rural areas (p. 180).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>From the initiatives mentioned above it is clear that the DHCS is aware of, and trying to address the limited access of rural communities to health and social development services. Since the ‘Land Suitability Analysis’ focuses on areas close to health and other municipal services, it will not place undue pressure on the DHCS to provide new facilities.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>The following hospitals are prioritized for improved service delivery in the document: Chris Hani Baragwanath; Natalspruit; Far East Rand; Leratong; Tambo Memorial; Edenvale; Pholsong; Helen Joseph; Charlotte Maxeke; Steve Biko. In partnership with DBSA the following hospitals will be improved: Kalafong; Odi; Jubilee; Dr. George Mukhari; Sebokeng and Tembisa (p. 7).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Although none of these hospitals are located in rural areas, the majority of them are located close to, or on, the periphery of the urban areas, thus they are relatively close to many rural areas.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seventeen Early Childhood Development Facilities will be established between 2009 and 2014: Mamelodi, Kagiso, Musiville, Ratanda, Refilwe, Daveyton, Duduza, Katlehong, Tembisa, Tsakane, Kwa Thema, Wattville, Garankuwa, Soshanguve, Biopatong, Sharpville, Alexandra (p. 9). Ratanda falls within Zone 5 and Refilwe in Zone 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUMMARY</td>
<td>SUPPORT</td>
<td>NEUTRAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</td>
<td>No specific actions are required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 40: Gauteng Department Of Agriculture And Rural Development Strategic Plan 2009 – 2014

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• 2010</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The strategic plan sets out the focus areas of the GDRDLR for the years 2009 till 2014. The GDRDLR’s Strategic Plan is guided by the Gauteng Provincial Government’s Five Year Strategic Priorities as well as the National Government’s Twelve Outcomes, especially Outcome 7 (Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all) and Outcome 10 (Environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and continually enhanced). To realise its mandate GDARD formulated a Vision to build “Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities that contribute to food security for all” (p. 2).

- The mission of GDARD is to unlock the full potential of environment, agriculture and rural development to enhance the economic, ecological and social wealth of all the people of Gauteng through (p. 6):
  - Improved access to affordable, diverse and nutritious food;
  - Accelerated sustained agrarian reform;
  - Champions of animal health and welfare in a cost-sharing/recovery model;
  - Improved rural services and infrastructure to support sustainable livelihoods with respect to agriculture, environment, education, health, transport, and other forms of infrastructure and services;
  - Rural job creation linked to skills development and promoting economic livelihoods; and
  - Sustainable management of natural resources by promoting conservation, better management of waste and a reduction in greenhouse emission.

- With regard to ‘Agriculture and Food Security’ the document states that approximately 1080 black farmers have acquired land for primary agricultural production but that the challenges is to promote these farms for commercial purposes and to encourage more farmers to get into Agri-business/Agro-processing and the exporting of produce. Other focus areas for the GDARD is the impact of climate change, the carbon footprint of the agricultural sector, carbon mileage as the latest non-tariff barrier to export, the food versus fuel debate, the ware quality and quantity of the sector, bio-security concerns, the need for alternative energy sources, recycling, the growing importance of disaster mitigation and management and the increase in occurrence of animal disease linked to climate change (p. 15).

- With regard to ‘Rural Development’ the GDARD identified fourteen rural nodes, with four (see below) identified as those with the highest level of human need. In addition to this the DRDRLR identified three issues that should be addressed but which does not fall within the mandate of the Department (p. 18):
  - Communication infrastructure in rural areas are mixed and it is proposed that the enhancement of broadband access with provide a solution;
  - Road infrastructure needs to be upgraded to support the rural development agenda; and
  - A District Development Plan on agriculture, environment and rural development should be developed so as to ensure a focussed approach.

**IMPLIED FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

Principle/Policy

- GDARD’s focus on promoting farmers to become involved in Agro-processing and export, and the support for increased communication and road infrastructure to support farming and agro-processing activities, provides in-principle support for the Draft LSM.

Proposals

- Through a layered analysis fourteen rural develop nodes were identified in the province, with the four below identified as those with the highest level of human need and thus the most appropriate pilot areas for rural development in Gauteng (p. 17):
  - Devon and Bantu Bonke in the Midvaal Local Municipality;
  - Sokhulumi in the Kungwini Local Municipality (now City of Tshwane); and
  - Hekpoort in the Mogale City Local Municipality.

- The four rural development nodes identified as the highest priority are located within the rural development zones identified in the Draft LSM:
  - Devon (Midvaal LM) lies within a ‘Lower intensity rural economy’ potential development typology within Zone 4;
- Bantu Bonke (Midvaal LM) lies within a ‘Large-scale agriculture with limited settlement’ potential development typology within Zone 5 (need to verify, not exactly sure of exact location);
- Sokhulumi (Kungwini LM/now City of Tshwane MM) lies within a ‘Large-scale agriculture with limited settlement’ potential rural typology within Zone 2 (need to verify, not sure of exact location – could be part of/next to the ‘residential estate and settlement’ identified); and
- Hekpoort (Mogale City LM) lies within a ‘Lower intensity rural economy’ potential rural typology within Zone 8.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

* We need to identify and include the fourteen rural development nodes if we have not done so already as well as establish the exact location of Bantu Bonke and Sokhulumi.

---

**Table 41: Gauteng Department Of Education Five-Year Strategic Plan 2009 – 2014**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

2009: Current Strategic Plan

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The Strategic Plan of the GDE outlines the key priorities and programmes for the years 2009 to 2014.
- The priority areas of the GDE are: (1) Ensuring Gauteng has effective schools and learning institutions; (2) GDE head and district offices provide relevant, coordinated and effective support; (3) Enabling young people to make the transition from school to further education and or work that provides further training opportunities; and (4) Strengthening partnerships with all stakeholders, resulting in education becoming a societal priority (p. 30).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principles/Policy**

- The GDE aims to improve the environment for learning and teaching through expanding (1) the number of no-fee schools; (2) the nutrition programme to secondary schools; (3) scholar transport; (4) after school care in high risk areas; (5) socio-psychological support to children; and (6) the use of hostels for schools in rural areas. In order to improve the quality and accessibility of education in rural areas more schools will be constructed and educators recruited (p. 37 and 44).
- The funding of FET colleges is shifting to national government. With regard to Adult Basic Education and Training (ABET) the GDE will provide adult learners in the province with access to education by providing more Public Adult Learning Centres that are in close proximity to the learners especially learners in rural areas. (p. 66).
- There is support for rural development and land reform initiatives to a certain extent, but there is no comprehensive focus on education in rural areas.

**Proposals**

* No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

* Determine whether the location of FET colleges in Gauteng was taken into consideration during the land assessment process.

---

**Table 42: Gauteng Agricultural Development Strategy (GADS)**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- 2006.
- Read in combination with:
  - The Gauteng Department of Agriculture, Conservation and Environment Annual Report of
• The GADS was developed in 2005/6, building on the Gauteng Growth and Development Strategy and Vision 2014 as well as the national Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture (2001). The approach of the GADS is holistic in nature, not just focusing on agriculture but on the integration of research, finance, extension and skills development measures (ABED and business skills) to overcome the historical dualism between commercial agriculture and emerging farmers.

• The purpose of the GADS is five-fold (2006: p. 6):
  o “To develop Gauteng’s agricultural economies (first and second) to attain their maximum potentials and convergence into one;
  o To maximise the contribution of the agricultural economy to job creation, poverty alleviation and economic growth in Gauteng;
  o To provide a co-ordinating framework for investment and implementation in the province;
  o To explicitly align agricultural development with the Gauteng Growth and Development strategy; and
  o To create a vehicle which facilitates the integration of the various existing national and provincial agricultural policies, laws and strategies which are applicable in Gauteng”.

• Five factors are identified as the basic building blocks of the GADS (2006: p. 20-21):
  o Natural Agricultural Resource Protection
    ▪ Protection of high potential agricultural land in Gauteng
  o Agricultural Planning and Market Analysis
    ▪ The strategic management of agricultural resources through the use of spatial planning tools and economic and marketing principles. Specific reference is made to the formation of agricultural hubs or commodity zones around areas of distinct competitive advantage (e.g. high potential agriculture). According to the 2007 Annual Report seven such hubs had been identified outside the urban edge to avoid conflict with other land uses, accounting for 36% of the total provincial land mass (2007: p. 4). The 2008 Annual Report states that the Agricultural Hubs Programme is informed by the Gauteng Agriculture Development Strategy of 2006 (2008: p. 61). No reference is made of Agricultural Hubs from 2009 onwards in the Annual Reports of the department.
  o Farmer Development and Support
    ▪ Development and support for farmers in the first and second economy, the main objective is to integrate the second economy farmers into the first economy
  o Enhancing the competitiveness of the sector
    ▪ Due to Gauteng’s lack of large tracks of agricultural land it should select and focus on ‘niche market’ agricultural products
  o Partnership formation and maintenance (intra and extra government)
    ▪ Utilise national programmes such as CASP and Landcare to implement GADS
  o Focus on vulnerable groups in agriculture
    ▪ Show preference to women, persons with disabilities and the elderly with regard to accessing support and other services.

• The following Strategic Priorities are identified (2006: p. 38):
  o Supporting land reform by means of smallholder farming on high potential agricultural land, taking into consideration the need for other land use types such as residential, business and conservation. (An agricultural land use inventory, and a study on competing land uses was being undertaken by GDACE at the time);
  o The formation of agricultural hubs, corridors or development zones in line with the approach taken by the national Department of Agriculture;
  o Niche-market and high-value crops which would provide the province with a competitive edge. (A study by the Agricultural Research Council identified approximately twenty crops that should be focused on);
  o Intensive animal agriculture which can be accomplished on small portions of land such as goats,
geese, turkeys, poultry, piggeries and feedlots;
  
  o Value adding (agro-processing) in close proximity to the urban market of imported (mainly from other provinces) primary agricultural produce and own grown niche-market and high-value crops;
  
  o Identifying the latest technologies through agricultural research (partnering with tertiary institutions, ARC and the CSIR) and applying them;
  
  o Integrated Food Security targeted at the unemployed who do not have access to existing government grants or temporary employment on government’s EPWP;
  
  o Labour intensification; and
  
  o Supporting black farmers from the 2nd economy who are at various developmental stages to ultimately become successful commercial farmers.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

• This strategy focuses on protection and development agriculture as a whole, however with a specific focus on rural development and land reform and the three land categories that had been identified including the criteria of which they are composed, it can be said that categories developed are in-line with the GADS’s basic building blocks as outlined above.

• Across the board, the categories, as they stand, aim to (1) protect high potential agricultural land in Gauteng; (2) strategically identify land for rural development and land reform through the use of spatial planning tools; (3) integrate the first and second economy; and (4) ensure value-addition (agro-processing) in close proximity to the urban market.

**Proposals**

• No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE /CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION / PROJECT RESPONSE**

• Determine what the status and impact of the proclamation of the agricultural hubs and commodity zones is and has been.

---

**Table 43: Gauteng Employment. Growth And Development Strategy 2009 – 2014**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

• 2009: Current Strategic Plan.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

• The GEGDS focuses on the first strategic priority identified in the 2009-2014 Gauteng Medium Term Strategic Framework, which aim to ‘create decent work and build a growing, inclusive economy’. It outlines a set of strategic choices and programmes that will build towards a strong and sustainable Gauteng economy in which all can access economic opportunities and enjoy decent work. While it focuses on the first priority in the MTSF, this GEGDS does also refer to other strategic priorities to the extent that they also contribute to the overall agenda to build a strong and inclusive economy.

• There are five strategic pillars that structure the GEGDS: (1) Transforming the provincial economy through improved efficiency; (2) Sustainable employment creation; (3) Increasing economic equity and ownership; (4) Investing in people; and (5) Sustainable communities and social cohesion.

• On the whole, this GEGDS makes reference and takes its cue from other plans and strategies developed by the various provincial departments, especially with regard to rural development no new direction or approach is taken.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

• Specific drivers are identified which drives each of the strategic pillars as mentioned above, and although various ones are applicable to this study ‘Rural and Agricultural Development and Food Security’, which falls under the ‘Sustainable communities and social cohesion’ pillar, is the most relevant. It refers to the Gauteng Rural Development Strategy and Agriculture Development Strategy and does not add anything new to what is already outlined in these strategies. The GEGDS does however expand on the issue of food security specifically with regard to local agricultural production.
and identifies the following key interventions:

- Promotion of food gardens;
- Efforts to increase the availability of land for agricultural production, especially high-yielding land in the province as well as arid land in rural communities for the Moringa Oleifera Project;
- Promotion of skills development and management training necessary for small scale sustainable farming with the agricultural sector education and training authority in collaboration with farm schools;
- Extension of agricultural and investment services to support small scale (subsistence) farmers coupled with possible funding leveraged from relevant government agencies – aimed at increasing capitalization for these farmers;
- Revival of agricultural expos; and
- Support for CLED initiatives in agriculture (p. 60).

- With regard to Strategic Economic, Socio-economic and Bulk Infrastructure development, mention is made of the development of a Gauteng Infrastructure Investment Framework – currently this master plan (as described on the DT’s website is still being developed). According to the GEGDS, R40-billion will be spent on infrastructure projects in Gauteng between 2009 and 2014; the location and type of these projects could influence the identification of the land categories (p. 60).

- The GEGDS identifies ‘Community-led Local Economic Development’ as a means of improving the condition of poor communities. This is achieved through community participation, together with various public works programmes (i.e. the Community Works Programme and the EPWP II), stimulating the entrepreneurial energy and spirit in communities that foster growth in communities from below. According to the GEGDS a Gauteng Local Economic Development Strategic Framework has been developed. However, to date the framework is not accessible online (p. 46).

### Proposals

- No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

### SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- Reference is made to various plans and strategies not yet completed or available online:
  - Gauteng Local Economic Development Strategic Framework (p. 60);
  - Gauteng Infrastructure Investment Master Plan (p. 46);
  - Gauteng Transport Master Plan (p. 52);
  - Gauteng Freight Strategy (p. 52); and
  - Gauteng Public Transport Integration Plan (p. 52).

- It is crucial that these documents are used in the consulted in the refinement of the Draft LSM.

### Table 44: Green Strategic Programme For Gauteng

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2011: Final document.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Green Strategic Programme (GSP) is meant to inform objectives and activities of departments and municipalities in the province so that all parts of government working on green issues within Gauteng are focussed on the same targets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The GSP begins from the premise that it is not sufficient to simply select a limited number of economic firms or clusters for targeted green support, but that rather, that the sustainability of the economy depends on a fundamental transformation in number of sectoral areas. These cross-cutting sectors include air quality, climate change, economic development, energy, food security, land use, transport, water and sanitation, and waste, which together form the foundation for a true green economy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The view of the GSP is that investing in these sectors will promote economic growth with the result that green jobs will become the norm, rather than add-ons to inherently unsustainable development.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Although the majority of the cross-cutting sectors impact rural development and land reform in one way or another, the following are most relevant to rural development and land reform:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• Economic Development: The GSP focuses on the creation of green jobs and as such focuses on training and apprenticeships for skills required by green industries, ensuring that 20-30% of work opportunities created in municipal EPWP programmes are in green jobs programmes and providing support to small enterprises and co-operatives in the green economy with ‘business angle support’ or assistance in connecting into the supply chains of larger businesses (p. 47).

• Food Security: The envisaged outcome is to develop Gauteng into a regional food economy hub where there is proactive investment in local organic food production, small-scale urban agriculture and local food chains. With regard to improved access to food for local communities key activities are: (1) establish Local Food Markets (to promote informal sector and LED); (2) Upscale Feeding Schemes with an additional focus on tertiary institutions and Food Banks; (3) establish Community Restaurants/Nutrition Centres; (4) establish community supermarkets with affordable, subsidised food or introduce food stamps; and (5) waiver toll fees for food transports and biofuel conversion subsidies for food transport (p. 56-57).

  ▪ In order to address the weak and uncompetitive small-scale and organic/conservation agriculture sector the following is proposed: (1) incentivise conversion through conditional subsidies and rebates; (2) establish capitalisation – a microfinance scheme – for small-scale farmers who want to turn to conservation agriculture and establish EPWP/CWP partnerships; (3) adjust tendering scorecard criteria to reward preferential local and conservation agriculture procurement; (4) establish local resource and training centres; (5) land allocation for allotments and peri-urban agriculture in IDPs and SDFs; and (6) protect and develop productivity of agriculture potential through promotion and incentives for conservation agriculture (p. 58).

• Spatial Planning and Land Use: Regarding agricultural land the following activities are set out: (1) develop agriculture subsidy for small scale organic and other ‘alternative’ farmers; (2) sustainably utilise medium and high potential land; (3) improved skills transfer and education through improved uptake of green learnerships; (4) review existing successful rehabilitation of degraded land and follow a similar process and plan; and (5) roll out a Land Care programme to rehabilitate natural resources through programmes including EPWP to support emerging and established farmers (p. 62-63).

  ▪ From the above it is clear that with regard to rural development and land reform there are scope for the incorporation of green approaches to farming and production with the needed support provided by the GPG.

Proposals

• No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposal</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

• We might need to incorporate a green angle in our rural development and land reform plans as the GPG seem to be strongly focussed on the development of a green economy, and it is important that the rural communities reap the benefits of such an economy.

---

**Table 45: Gauteng Growth And Development Strategy**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

• 2005: Unsure of current status – although the strategy is still referenced in the Gauteng SDF 2011.

**OVERVIEW OF DOCUMENT CONTENT**

• The aim of the Gauteng Growth and Development Strategy (GGDS) is to:
  o Ensure that all Provincial socio-economic development is based on the principle of integrated, sustainable, holistic and participatory planning and development;
  o Provide economic growth, job creation and related targets for the Province over the next decade of democracy;
  o Build on co-operative governance and inter-governmental relations towards ensuring integrated service delivery, optimal use of all government resources and requisite budget allocations to support growth and development;
  o Consolidate and increase relationships and partnerships with other sectors of society such as...
Public Private Partnerships (PPPs);
- Identify opportunities for all sectors of society and all citizens to be involved in the reconstruction and development of our Province;
- Provide growth and development implementation guidelines for each sector in society;
- Build on existing socio-economic successes and address gaps and weaknesses;
- Support the GPG growth and development policies to be implemented in the next decade of democracy; and
- Ensure that the socio-economic successes of the Province are beneficial to South Africa as a whole and to the Continent (p. 4-5).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

### Principle/Policy

- The GGDS identified six growth sectors and clusters for targeted and increased support and investment. The targeting was based on the potential and opportunities that these sectors offer in terms of nominal and real investment growth, value added growth, employment growth and productivity. These sectors and clusters are:
  - Smart Industries;
  - Trade and Services;
  - Tourism;
  - Agriculture (agro-processing and bio-tech);
  - Manufacturing; and
  - Infrastructure expansion and investment (p. 19).

- From this it can be deduced that in principle the GGDS support tourism and agricultural (specifically agro-processing bio-tech) developments.

- Furthermore the GGDS supports and sees the following as crucial in the success of the GGDS: SMMEs, BBBEE, the EPWP and Skills Development (p. 19-21).

**Proposals**

No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

No specific actions are required.

---

**Table 46: Gauteng Department Of Local Government And Housing Strategic Plan 2009 – 2014**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• 2009: Current Strategic Plan, read in conjunction with the Gauteng Department of Local Government and Housing Annual Report 2011/2012.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The Strategic Plan provides an overview of the programmes to be implemented between 2009 and 2014 with a focus on the creation of cohesive and sustainable communities and inclusive economic environments conducive to the creation of decent work.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

### Principle/Policy

- The Strategic Plan makes specific reference to the “Creation of human settlement within/in proximity of social and economic service and amenities” (p. 16), which supports the basic principles on which the
land categories were developed and identified as they focus not just on available land but also the land’s linkages to social and economic services and nodes.

- With regard to actual programmes, the Strategic Plans stipulates that with regard to Rural Housing Development 450 service sites should be improved/upgraded and 886 housing units should be completed over the five years (p. 25).
- Furthermore the acquisition, management and development of suitable well-located land (including state owned) for the creation of sustainable human settlements are identified as a strategic objective. Specific Sub-programmes/projects are (1) Rural Housing development through restoring security of tenure for farm workers and rural households — the five year performance target is have 4 land parcels procured for on-farm housing development (p. 27); and (2) Land management through the implementation of the land acquisition programme with the five year target being the acquisition of a 100 land parcels (p. 28).
- Overall the land categories as developed are in-line with the approach of the Gauteng Department of Local Government and Housings to the provision of housing in Gauteng.

### Proposals

- No specifics with regard to the location of the above programmes/projects are mentioned.
- According to the GDLGH Annual Report 2011/2012, 339 housing units were achieved for rural housing from 2011-2012 in Badirile Phase 1 and 2 and Thembalethu rural housing projects. Badirile is located in Zone 9 (Westrand District DM) identified as ‘Large-scale Agriculture with limited settlement’ (cannot locate Thembalethu). It would thus seem that rural housing is being provided in areas that were identified as an area where limited housing should be provided.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposal</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The Strategic Plan makes reference to a Report on the Promotion and Access to Tenure Security for Rural Communities in Gauteng. Access to this report, if available, could be of importance.

### Table 47: Gauteng ICT Strategy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Document cannot be accessed as the web-link does not work.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Proposals**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE / CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION / PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| • It is crucial that the document be accessed, as the proposals could be of importance to the GRDLRPs.

### Table 48: Gauteng Industrial Policy Framework 2010 – 2014

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• 2010</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The recommendations provided in this document put forward a framework for industrial policy, but not an industrial policy action plan or programme for implementing the policy.
- Economic analysis techniques were used to study and filter sectors in order to identify sectors where
industrial policy interventions would help the province achieve its socio-economic goals, particularly increasing decent work opportunities and promoting environmentally sustainable development.

- The following sectors were identified in the analysis: (1) Food and beverage; (2) Furniture; (3) Textile and Clothing; (4) Construction; (5) Machinery and Equipment; and (6) Automotive and Components (p. 9).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- With regard to ‘Food and Beverages’ the GIPF highlights local food production as an important strategy to improve food security and economic performance, with a specific focus on building a stronger regional food economy through diversification and value-adding initiatives (p. 10).
- As such the land categories as identified, as well as the rationale behind their functioning, is in-line with the GIPF, specifically with regard to ‘Large-Scale Agriculture with limited Settlement’ and ‘Rural Economic Activities and Related Settlement’ which focuses on agricultural development as well as value-adding and agro-processing.

**Proposals**

- No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- No specific actions are required.

---

### Table 49: Department Of Infrastructure Development Strategic Plan 2009 – 2014

#### YEAR AND STATUS


#### DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

- This document sets out the key programmes of the Department of Infrastructure Development (DID) over the years 2009 to 2014.
- The Strategic Plan states that the provision of new, and the upgrading of existing public infrastructure, is geared towards catalysing accelerated economic growth and development in Gauteng, an objective which is the centre of the long-term vision (Vision 2055) of Gauteng.
- According to the Strategic Plan, the planning of infrastructure provision will integrate economic, social and environmental sectors to ensure sustainable stimulation of the economy, as such the development of an integrated infrastructure plan, is seen as key.
- The Gauteng Integrated Infrastructure Master Plan is at the date of this assessment (April 2013) being developed.

#### IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

**Principle/Policy**

- Relevant Outcome Oriented Goal: “Achieving vibrant and sustainable rural communities by means of delivering infrastructure projects related to agriculture and rural development as identified by DARD as client department” (p. 23).
- No specific principles regarding the provision of infrastructure projects are provided, but as it evident in the goal provided above the Did takes its’ cue from DARD.
- With regard to Public Works Infrastructure the Department of Infrastructure takes responsibility for the planning and construction of GPG CAPEX projects for the DARD infrastructure (p. 31)

**Proposals**

- No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The team needs to establish what the status of the Gauteng Integrated Infrastructure Master Plan is.
Table 50: Gauteng Integrated Co-Operatives Development Implementation Strategy 2010

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>2010</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

- The Implementation Strategy represents an implementable plan of action designed to propose support measures and instruments that will be pursued to facilitate the development of co-operatives and the cooperative sector in the Gauteng Province.
- The four strategic principles that underpin the GICDIS are to:
  - Provide a common approach to co-operative development in the different provincial sectors;
  - Develop sustainable co-operatives in Gauteng;
  - Contribute to the process of linking co-operatives into the existing value chains and growth sectors in the Provincial economy; and
  - Provide coordinated and collaborative support across the different spheres of government, the private and community sectors (p. 7).

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy
- The GICDIS identifies six key sectors which should be targeted: (1) Agriculture and agro-processing; (2) Manufacturing; (3) Retail; (4) Construction; (5) Logistics and transport; and (6) Tourism.
- Out of these six, agriculture and agro-processing, retail and tourism are identified as priority sectors (p. 11). As such, it can be assumed that the GICDIS will support the development of co-operatives around agriculture, agro-processing and tourism in the identified land type categories, which also specifically focus on agriculture, agro-processing and tourism and linking these rural activities to existing businesses and urban areas.

Proposals
- No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SUMMARIES: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>XXXXX</th>
<th>XX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 51: Gauteng Provincial Government’s Programme Of Action 2009 – 2014

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>2009: Current Programme</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

OVERVIEW OF DOCUMENT CONTENT

- The GPA identifies seven strategic priorities for Gauteng which will be the critical focus areas between 2009 and 2014:
  - Creating decent work and building a growing, inclusive economy;
  - Promoting quality education and skills development;
  - Prioritising better health care for all;
  - Stimulating rural development and food security;
  - Intensifying the fight against crime and corruption;
  - Building cohesive and sustainable communities; and
  - Strengthening the development state and good governance.

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy
- With regard to ‘stimulating rural development and food security’, a key priority is to undertake equitable regional development to improve access to infrastructure and services in the rural areas of Gauteng.
- Specific programmes that are identified in the programme are:
Developing an integrated rural development strategy and implementing socio-economic infrastructure projects including roads, water, sanitation, provision of electricity, and the building of schools and clinics, revitalising the rail infrastructure in rural areas as a source of job creation and providing support for skills development and financial assistance to cooperatives and small enterprises;

Maximising agricultural sector growth and jobs by protecting existing arable land, promoting agricultural co-operatives, agribusiness and the agro-processing sector, effectively utilising agricultural hubs and reviving agricultural Expos, implementing the biotechnology strategy and developing a Bio-science Park;

Ensuring food security by implementing the Gauteng Integrated Food Security Programme, providing emergency food relief and assistance to the poorest, and expanding food production through the food for all programme, the Letsema/lilma initiatives, the Homestead Good Gardens Project and empowerment projects in communities hardest hit by poverty using school land;

Protecting and encouraging the sustainable use and management of our natural resources and environment by developing a Climate Change Adaptation and Mitigation Strategy and reviewing the Gauteng Strategy for Sustainable Development, by implementing a revised Bontle ke Botho campaign and holding Izimbizo educating communities on the impact of litter on the environment and health of communities; and

Developing an integrated provincial land management and land use strategy and short to long term plan (p. 14-15).

From the above overview of identified programmes it is clear that the three land categories are in line with programmes identified by the Gauteng Provincial Government with regard to rural development. The GRDLRP-land categories link strongly to programme number two, but will be able to take advantage of and incorporate the other programmes in the roll-out of the rural development and land reform plans.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposals</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 52: Department Of Roads And Transport Strategic Plan 2009 – 2014**

**YEAR AND STATUS**


**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The document provides an outline of the strategic objectives and programmes of the Department of Roads and Transport for the years 2009-2014.
- It acknowledges the pressure that Gauteng’s Economic position has placed on the provision of public transport and infrastructure due to rapid urbanisation and increased motorization.
- The following high-level goals are set out in the strategic plan:
  - “(1) Development of a modern integrated transport system that provides high quality, accessible, efficient, safe, affordable and environmentally sound transport services;
  - (2) Contribution to the overall achievement of economic growth by investing in the development of road infrastructure systems, thereby improving Gauteng to be a competitive city region;
  - (3) Building the technical capacity of the department to ensure good governance; and
  - (4) Provision of sustainable transport infrastructure that will improve the quality of life by minimizing environmental hazards” (p. 12)

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- Under the goal of contributing to the overall achievement of economic growth, reference is made to investing in the development of road infrastructure systems. This is seen as leading to the development of a spatially disperse roads infrastructure system, which will allow for the development of new industrial or economic zones in the peripheries and rural parts of the province, linking them to the well-
developed major urban conglomerates in the centre. As such, the GDRT Strategic Plan provides for the provision of infrastructure linking rural areas to the urban cores (p. 13).

- Relevant key interventions:
  - “To prioritize rural roads to ensure link with economic hubs/nodes” (p. 23) – according to the GDRT’s Strategic Plan ‘Rural nodes linkage plans’ were to be adopted in 2010 and currently priority rural road infrastructure should be rolled-out.
  - “To provide the necessary transport and roads infrastructure to promote economic linkages between rural and urban areas and the protection thereof” (p. 23) – according to the GDRT’s Strategic Plan a ‘Non-motorised Transport Intervention Strategy’ should be approved in 2011 and currently implemented, the aim is to have it fully operationalized in 2014. The ‘Integrated Public Transport Network’ (IPTN) designs were to be formally extended to incorporate rural Gauteng in 2009 and by 2014 all IPTN designs should be applied.
  - “To create easy public transport access” (p. 24) – according to the GDRT’s Strategic Plan in 2009 the strategy to extend Public Transport operations to rural areas through IPTN should have been finalised and by 2014 a fully operational public transport integrated service should be in place.

**Proposals**

- In order to assess the impact of proposals the ‘Rural Nodes Linkage Plans’ and the ‘Non-motorised Transport Intervention Strategy’ needs to be accessed. However, at the time of the study (April 2013), the GDRT’s website was under construction, and hence no further information could be obtained regarding these plans and strategies.

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The location of the priority rural roads and Non-motorised transport interventions will definitely have an impact on the Land Suitability Analysis. It is important that the information is accessed for the further stages of the study.

---

**Table 53: Gauteng Department Of Education Scholar Transport Policy**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- 2011: Adopted.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The policy was developed to address the issue of some learners being deprived of access to education due to the distance that they have to travel to and from school on a daily basis.
- The purpose of the Scholar Transport Policy is to set out guidelines for the provision of scholar transportation services for learners and ensure that learning are punctual and arrive safe at school for effective learning and teaching to take place uninterrupted (p. 5).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- All learners who, through no choice of their own, walk a distance of five kilometres or more to the nearest ordinary school per single trip will be provided with learner transport (p. 7). As such, the GSTP will provide for the provision of transport if it so happens that a rural settlement is established more than five kilometres from the nearest school.

**Proposals**

- No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- No specific actions need to be taken.

---

**Table 54: Gauteng Spatial Development Framework**

---

**Gauteng Rural Development Plan**

---

68
**YEAR AND STATUS**

- 2011

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The GSDF is a fundamental element of the wider G2055 programme that sets the comprehensive economic, ecological, social, cultural and inclusionary charter for the Gauteng City Region (GCR) and provides strategic guidance as to how resources are to be directed and managed. It provides the spatial context in which all these items of the programmes find physical shape and provides the leadership for the metropolitan, district and local municipalities in preparing their more detailed SDFs.

- According to the GSDF, Gauteng has the administrative, urban management and economic advantages of an urban area having relatively little rural hinterland associated with its jurisdiction. As a provincial entity, Gauteng therefore, has the advantage of not having to dilute its provincial budget over a widely dispersed rural hinterland (p. 2). One of the principles underpinning the GSDF is that the greater part of the province should be kept rural for agriculture, recreational, bio-diversity and aquifer management purposes (p. 30).

- The GSDF does not allocate more than 30% of the provincial area to urban development (currently the province stands at 27%), the remaining 70% ‘green’ area being a vital component of the GSDF. According to the GSDF this 70% ‘green’ area serves three primary purposes:
  - It is a zone in which ‘ecological husbandry’ takes place (for example biodiversity, aquifer protection, natural systems protection and natural cycles are paramount);
  - Agricultural land is valued, and the rural economy is linked to agriculture and agricultural husbandry is optimised as the ‘urban breadbasket’, such that food security and high-intensity agriculture and training are achieved on the threshold of the vast Gauteng urban market as an integral part of their expanded urban economy; and
  - The natural beauty and recreation capacity of the ‘green zone’ is an invaluable asset to the GSDR given the high intensity of urban development being planned, and this area is to be optimised as a vital recreational resource for the mega-city (p. 65).

- For these reasons, the ‘green’ zone forming the greater part of the GSDF is to be regarded as a ‘green girdle’ that compresses the future urban system and limits its unbridled and unsustainable sprawl.

- According to the GSDF, although the Gauteng Urban Edge was repealed in 2009, limitations on unnecessary outward expansion of the urban system into peri-urban and rural land still apply (p. 129).

- A key perspective that, according to the GSDF, requires further consultation and analysis and which could possibly be developed into Policy Position Papers in the future, is the integration of rural and urban economies.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- GSDF Policy Perspectives: Several of the policy perspectives set out in the GSDF Policy Perspective section focus on the consolidation of the urban system into an area not exceeding 30% of the provincial area and maximising a ‘green girdle’ of ecological, agricultural and recreational value containing the urban system.

- According to the GSDF Policy Perspective on ‘Integration of the rural and urban economies of Gauteng’ (p. 182), the GCR’s burgeoning urban system should be used as a driver of rural development and economic prosperity. The GSDF notes that a fairly significant section of Gauteng’s rural hinterland (largely the east and south-eastern sectors) is good for extensive maize production and that, in these terms, Gauteng is important from a national food security point of view. In addition to this it emphasises the very real economic opportunity that goes with being able to produce good and allied value-added agricultural products intensively so close to the greatest and most affluent market concentration in the subcontinent (p. 182-183).

- The GSDF states that the province’s designated agricultural hubs are vital to assist in creating (1) a symbiosis between the centralist and peripheral markets whereby significant amounts of goods consumed in the Gauteng urban system can be sourced from its rural hinterland; and (2) cooperative installations such as silos and central refrigeration plants to make it possible or all producers, regardless of scale, to meet the standards demanded of the Gauteng urban market (p. 183).

- The GSDF also states that rural development initiatives must target the extensive and growing opportunities associated with the recreational and leisure needs associated with a mega-city’s population and its lifestyle needs (p. 183).

- According to the GSDF Policy Perspective on ‘Preservation of land having agricultural value’ agriculture is significant to the GCR and food security is of high priority, there fore the containment of urban
development within the outer extent of urban development is vital. Due to the low density of Gauteng’s population, the GSDF aims to rather substantially increase the intensity of urban development and preserve the rest of the province for ecological quality, environmental integrity, food production at scale and recreational amenity for the urban system. The following approach will be used: “(a) Where a small amount of relatively good quality agricultural land creates an undesirable disjuncture in urban continuity, to rather for urban continuity, recognising that the fundamentals of productive urban agriculture are satisfied in the 70% remaining extent of the province; (b) where an environmental resource of limited extent (such as grassland) creates unwanted discontinuity, elect rather to offset this resource by consolidating a more extensive-like –habitat outside the urban system, again within the 70% allocated for the environment” (p. 170).

- The GSDF takes cognisance of Gauteng’s designated agricultural hubs (p. 171) but according to the GSDF the ‘Anticipated outer extent of urban development by 2055’ will take up some of these agricultural areas (p. 171). With regard to the nine zones identified in our study, the zones will be affected as follows (please note that these descriptions are not very accurate, GSDF map is not very detailed):
  - Zone 1: Urban development will stretch from the current Tshwane urban area up to Hammanskraal;
  - Zone 4: Western parts of this zone will become urban;
  - Zone 5: Although the map provided in the GSDF is not clear, it seems to predict that Heidelberg will be incorporated into the urban area of Gauteng; and
  - Zone 7: This zone seems to diminish considerably.
- The value that the GSDF attaches to the Gauteng rural hinterland specifically supports the ‘Large-scale Agriculture with limited Settlement’ and to a certain extent the ‘Rural Economic Activities and Related Settlement’ land categories. However, although not explicitly stated, its focus on decidedly limiting urban expansion to no more than 30% of the provincial land area, calls into question its support for the establishment of townships outside the designated area, especially on a low-density level such as outlined in the ‘Small-Scale Agriculture-Based Rural Settlement’ land category. The GSDF views rural Gauteng in terms of how it supports urban Gauteng and as such sees its development mainly in terms of agriculture and recreational activities.

### Proposals

- No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td></td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- The project team needs to:
  - Map the ‘Anticipated outer extent of urban development by 2055’ as identified in the GSDF and establish what the policy of the province will be regarding these areas; and
  - Discuss the opportunities for rural development with the Gauteng Department of Economic Development.

---

**Table 55: Gauteng School Education Act 6 Of 1995**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>1995</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The Act provides for:
  - The powers of the MEC;
  - Matters relating to schooling;
  - Public schools, including special schools and their governance;
  - Funding of public and independent schools; and
  - Matters affecting educators and rural education.
- Chapter 11 deals specifically with Rural Education, but the focus is only on farm schools.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Of specific significance is Chapter 11, Section 91, which deals with remuneration of educators at schools in rural areas:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
An educator at a school situated in a rural area or a peri-urban area shall be entitled to the same remuneration and benefits as he or she would earn were he or she employed by the department at a school in an urban area; and

Notwithstanding the provision of Section 83, the Member of the Executive Council may, with the concurrence of the financial head, provide for the payment of supplementary remuneration and benefits to educators employed at schools in rural areas or peri-urban areas.

### Proposals
- No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Policy</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**
- No specific actions are required.

### Table 56: Gauteng SMME Policy Framework 2010 – 2014

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>2010</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**
- The Gauteng SMME Policy Framework provides a comprehensive qualitative and quantitative framework for the development of small, medium and micro enterprises in the Gauteng Province.

- The principles and guides that inform the design and management of SMME development interventions in the province are as follows:
  - The Gauteng Provincial Government will provide oversight and leadership in the development of the SMME sector and ensure integration with other programmes from the different spheres of government;
  - Support for the development of opportunities for BBBEE;
  - Systemic and sustainable approaches to SMME development must be applied;
  - Continuous assessment, reform and dialogue with the business community needs to take place;
  - SMME development services are carefully targeted, demand oriented, responsive, and integrated;
  - All actors engaged in the SMME sector work together to ensure their action are complementary and coordinated;
  - SMME development should pay special attention to women, young people, people with disabilities, and enterprises operating in previously disadvantaged areas;
  - Development of new methods and infrastructure to promote SMME development;
  - Investment into the generation and management of knowledge concerning the provision of SMME sector and development interventions;
  - Align SMME development interventions with the targeted sectors identified in the Draft Gauteng Industrial Policy Framework;
  - Perform regulatory impact assessments on all new local policies, laws and regulations to clarify the positive and negative impacts that they might have on the SMME sector before they are introduced; and
  - Set clear targets for SMME development (p. 28).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**
- The SMME Policy Framework makes reference to the alignment of SMME development interventions with the sectors identified by the Draft Gauteng Industrial Policy Framework. However, the sectors identified in the SMME Policy Framework (transport and equipment; wood and paper; publishing and printing; textiles, clothing and leather; food beverages and tobacco; other non-metal mineral products; and construction) are not the same as those identified in the Gauteng Industrial Policy Framework, of which the date of publication is later than that of the SMME Policy Framework (p. 29).

**Proposals**
- No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.
Table 57: Gauteng Social Development Strategy 2006

**YEAR AND STATUS**
- 2006: The DHSD Strategic Plan for 2009-2014 states that it will continue to implement the Gauteng Social Development Strategy of 2006.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**
- The GSDS takes cognisance of the fact that Gauteng is one of the most densely populated and highly urbanized provinces in South Africa, but also makes reference to the sparsely populated peri-urban communities situated far from economic opportunities.
- The GSDS states that the high level of in-migration of low to non-skilled labour into the province leads to the urbanisation of poverty, growing inequality, dysfunctional families and communities, the disruption of social support systems and social problems such as ‘gangsterism’, street children and social crimes against women and children, older persons and people living with disabilities.
- Due to these challenges, the GSDS provides a framework for sustainable social development that places children, youth, women, the disabled and the elderly at the centre of its development efforts.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**
- The GSDS does not deal with rural development as a separate focus area but acknowledge the lack of social development in peri-urban and rural areas. The key principle underlying the GSDS of “Equitable distribution of public resources with due attention to racial, gender, geographic (urban/rural), special needs and other disparities” (p. 14) makes it clear that the Department believes in the equal distribution of public resources and thus does not support or reject rural development but address it as people in rural areas have the same rights to those in urban areas.
- One of the strategic levers identified by the GSDS is Local Economic Development (LED) with a focus on the advancement of the Expanded Public Works Programme, and the design of a strategy for local economic development. With regard to the development of a LED strategy the GSDS states that it will focus on growing the infrastructure and capacities for LED and establish a ‘Second Economy Innovation Centre’ (cannot find any proof that this has been done) to drive innovation for LED, as well as improve the link between the second and first economy.
- The GSDG mentions the importance of ICT facilities and Internet access and drives a province-wide programme to foster the acquisition of resources that will support ICT for LED. No specific reference is made of rural areas. It is, however, stated that local economic development is part of the rural development and land reform process (p. 18).
- The EPWP, with specific reference to the fields of environment, heritage, biodiversity and land care are identified as a programme that can assist in rural development and states that it must address the following issues:
  - Linking people in the marginalised “second economy” with opportunities and resources to enable their participation in the developed “first economy”;
  - Integrating these environmental and cultural factors both into sustainable rural development and urban renewal;
  - Creating land-based livelihoods;
  - Promoting community-based natural resource management; and
  - Developing the natural resources and cultural heritage” (p. 19).

**Proposals**
- No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.
Table 58: Gauteng Tourism Development Strategy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
<th>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The document outlines the strategy that the Department is to follow to assist Gauteng in reaching its Vision 2014.</td>
<td>As such, the land category ‘Rural Economic Activities and Related Settlement’ which will be situated close to or be part of areas with high tourism potential will most likely be supported by the strategy (p. 39).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It focuses on Gauteng in terms of the Global City Region and its strategies are geared towards improving and taking advantage of Gauteng as a Global City Region and placing it on the global map.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- The GTS states that unique and distinctive product clusters will be identified in the province and that a specific development approach will be decided upon between the department and the relevant municipalities. As far as it can be ascertained this has not happened, but this needs to be verified.

CITY OF TSHWANE METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY

Table 59: The Agricultural Village Programme, 2011 (City Of Tshwane Agriculture And Environmental Management Department)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2011, adopted by the CoT.</td>
<td>Referred to in the 2011 IDP for the City, support for the establishment of such villages was also provided on 7 April 2011 provided in a meeting of the CoT’s Mayoral Committee.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The programme has three components: (1) agricultural villages; (2) household food gardens: and (3) agricultural community projects.
- The first of the villages is to be developed in Rooiwal (proposed in 2011), in the northern part of the municipal area. The village will comprise of ‘... 20 production tunnels, 10 poultry houses, 10 piggery units, 2 shade nets and an irrigation system’. It is further stated that, ‘Of the 20 tunnels, 15 will be used for an incubation programme targeting Tshwane cooperatives, while the remaining 5 will be leased to Tshwane entrepreneurs for a period to be determined by the City. Of the 10 poultry and 10 piggery houses, each will be used for incubation, while the remaining 5 will be leased to Tshwane entrepreneurs for a period to be determined by the City. The village will also contain offices, labour houses, a pack house, processing facilities and a shed’.
- The Agriculture Division plans to establish at least one village in each of Tshwane’s seven regions. The
City plans to spend R33 million in establishing such villages.

- The City will approach the establishment of these villages in a collaborative fashion with the Gauteng Department of Agriculture and Rural Development (GDARD). In addition to this, the Agricultural Research Council (ARC) will provide continuing and regular technical extension support to the project, and the national Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) will monitor the project.
- Finally, community members will be selected for training and capacity building, farm infrastructure development and a mechanisation services scheme. The emphasis will throughout be on growing the local economy and creating jobs.

- Update: It was said on 13 August 2012, as part of the Tshwane 2055 initiative by Dr Ntsikane Maine, the Director of the Agricultural Development Programme in the City, that, “In the long-term, from 2023 to 2055, the City aims to establish sustainable agricultural villages in all regions of Tshwane to ensure the proper management of land, water and the environment. It also aims to create commodity cooperatives for smallholder farmers and support initiatives throughout the value chains to promote inclusive economy and growth. The City aims to establish an agricultural extension college where all farmers will be given on-site or practical training on the agricultural value chain, from primary to tertiary production.”

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- The Programme fully supports the objectives and principles of the GRDLRP.
- The villages as envisioned by the CoT are the same as those provided for in Category 2 of the GRDLRP – small-scale agricultural settlement.

**Proposals**

- The Rooiwal village supports the zone allocation as proposed.
- The proposals for the others are not site-specific as yet.

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principlce/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The Tshwane Agricultural Villages are the same as the villages proposed in the GRDLRP. It may be possible to boost the programme and the GRDLRP through collaboration, with the communities potentially benefitting substantially.
- It may be useful to meet with the City of Tshwane’s Agriculture and Environmental Management Department to discuss the project and explore options for collaboration.

---

**Table 60: The Tshwane Growth And Development Strategy, 2006 (Department Of Economic Development)**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- 2006. Not sure what the status is now, whether it has been updated.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The Tshwane Growth and Development Strategy (TGDS), 2006, is nearly seven years old, but it has as yet not been reviewed or updated, and is hence dealt with here as the municipality’s growth and development strategy.
- The strategy was the product at the time of a concern in all three spheres of government dealing with development planning and infrastructure investment and development spending, that (1) despite healthy economic growth at the time, this was largely jobless growth, and (2) municipal Integrated Development Plans (IDPs) were not factoring in the longer-term future, were too tied to the five-year terms of municipal councillors and had essentially become short-term spending plans. Growth and Development Strategies (GDS) were seen as a way of (1) thinking and acting strategically upon the economy and (2) of bringing the longer-term perspective to IDPs, with the idea being that the GDS would provide the 20-25 year horizon, and IDPs the five-year slices/programmes and with their focus being on the long-term 20-25-year objectives. This did not really materialise, with most municipalities preparing strategies that essentially were little different from the five-year IDPs.
- The rationale for the TGDS is stated in the document, ‘growing the economy so as to deal with developmental challenges confronting the country and the region’, and its object as, ‘... to unlock real and accelerated growth in the city and by extension in the country’.
It is argued in the document that the TGDS does not intend ‘... to cover all elements of a comprehensive development plan for the City, but will rather comprise a limited set of high-impact, fast-track interventions that can act as catalysts for accelerated and shared growth’.

The TGDS includes an analysis of the economy at the time, identifies a range of strategic levers, and puts forward a series of economic development strategies, based on the identified strengths of the area, notably the automotive, science, technology and innovation and logistics sectors.

The TGDS lists a number of activities to take on, in support of the second economy, grouped under (1) sustainable food security and (2) rural economic development and empowerment. It also proposes a strategy for developing the rural and peri-urban areas of the CoT. Key components of this strategy are (1) a cluster approach to rural development; (2) support of cooperative-establishment and development; and (3) tourism and creative industries.

The strategy indicates that the CoT adopted its own strategy on the Expanded Public Works Programme, expands on its operation and indicates how it links up with provincial and national programmes in this regard.

The TGDS also comes out in support of SMME-support and development, the empowerment of women, youth and people with disabilities, and provides ways in which this will be pursued by the CoT.

The TGDS makes it very clear that the City has no intention to go it alone, and that it sees the development task at hand as a joint venture with the private sector, organised labour, communities and NGOs, and is keen on partnerships.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- The TGDS also indicates that Tshwane is one of the few metropolitan areas in the country that still has a huge rural area with high agricultural potential. It argues *inter alia* that ‘High value crops for niche markets would give the CoT a competitive edge’, and that the challenge lies not so much in utilising the land, but unlocking the potential that lies in people, and ensuring that targeted communities get access to land.

- The strategy argues that there is a need to ‘connect the first and second economies’ and provides a number of ways of doing so. It *inter alia* proposes the support of cooperatives and the provision of good transport infrastructure to do so.

**Proposals**

- With regards to the Draft LSM of the GRDLRP, the TGDS identifies the northern half of Tshwane as an area that is not only in urgent need of development, but that has the potential to become a flourishing segment of the municipality. Mindful of the obstacles to such development the strategy lists the challenges that will need to be overcome and the investments that will have to be made for the area to realise its potential.

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION / PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The TGDS is fully supportive of the GRDLRP. In a number of instances in the document, the GRDLRP seems to be exactly what the strategy sought to support and advance. As in so many of the other policies, strategies and plans, the major task is hence not one of convincing, but rather of making contact (with the right people) and making officials and politicians in the City aware of the project.

---

**Table 61: Draft Tshwane Integrated Development Plan (2011-2016) For The Period 2011/2012 (City Of Tshwane)**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- 2011, adopted for the period 2011-2016

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- As all other municipalities in the country, the City of Tshwane (CoT) is legally bound to prepare an Integrated Development Plan (IDP) for its total municipal area of jurisdiction.

- The IDP was conceived as a strategic plan, prepared with broad-based public participation and stakeholder involvement to ensure that every municipality has a five-year plan, tied to a long-term vision, in accordance with which it will focus its energies, pursue the challenge of ensuring improved social and economic conditions for all, spend its budget, embark on new economic and social development ventures and address community needs in a planned, programmed way. In addition to
this, it provides a platform for municipalities with which to engage other spheres of government, as well as local/inward and foreign investors.

- IDPs are prepared every five years, after Local Government elections, and reviewed annually. The current Tshwane IDP is hence the last reviewed of the previous cycle, with a new IDP to be prepared after the local government elections in May 2011.

- While the current IDP is the last of the previous cycle, and hence also of the current municipal councillors in the municipality, it is also the last to have been prepared with the boundaries as they stood in 2006. The next IDP will be prepared for a new Tshwane that will include the current Metsweding District Municipality. (While the current IDP factored this development into its thinking, it could legally of course not plan for this area.)

- The IDP highlights that amongst others, the following areas in the north of the municipality have some of the highest densities and deprivation levels in the municipal area of the CoT, and also suffer from inadequate levels of access to municipal and other social services (health, welfare and education): (1) Temba/Hammanskraal; (2) Winterveld; (3) Soshangue; and (4) Ga-Rankuwa. These were subsequently also the areas that have since 1994 been targeted for new investment in infrastructure. It has for quite some time been foreseen that this investment will not only provide the residents in these areas with access to basic services, but also attract new private sector investment in the region. The IDP notes that the City also embarked on a pilot project to roll out solar water heaters in amongst others, the northern segment of the municipality, which has been proven to be a huge success.

- The IDP explains the recently introduced Region-based approach to planning, development and service-delivery in the municipality, in terms of which the City will after inclusion of the area of the District Municipality of Metsweding, have seven such regions. It furthermore highlights that these Regions are in the process of establishing formal structures for consultation and interaction with Ward Councillors, Ward Committees and stakeholders such as City Improvement Districts, Tertiary institutions; Business and Government.

- IDPs generally include, given South Africa’s past and the huge numbers of those left impoverished by it, long lists of backlogs in the areas of housing, infrastructure (potable water, electricity, sewerage, etc.), clinics, schools, etc., and this IDP is no exception.

- The IDP indicates that ‘the CoT has a goal of empowering members of the registered households so that they are able to gain skills and strategies to move out of the poverty cycle and to become self-supportive. One of the ways of achieving this goal is through linking and exposing the indigent registered household members to training and other resources’.

- In terms of economic development, the IDP pursues this by creating an enabling environment for economic competitiveness, growth, job creation and poverty eradication and through four key projects, viz. (1) by releasing strategically located land parcels; (2) putting in place an investment attraction framework to fast track land development applications so as to reduce the cost of doing business in the city; (3) revitalizing old economic nodes; and (4) attracting big investors to the city.

- The IDP identifies the largest part of the northern section of the municipality as ‘Rural/Agricultural’. It also highlights these areas as the places in which the City seeks to pursue the objectives as set out in national government’s comprehensive rural development strategy with its focus on land and agrarian reform, food security, the establishment of vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities, rural development and regional integration.

- In terms of spatial investment proposals, the broad spatial development framework in the IDP proposes three kinds of investment in the northern part of the municipality: (1) formalise existing informal settlements in terms of land legislation and provision of basic infrastructure and services; (2) develop areas in terms of the overall rural development strategy and where relevant, tourism ought to be promoted; and (3) promote and manage major regional environmental conservation areas.

- The IDP specifies the number of jobs that will be created by 2016, through initiatives in the IDP and the EPWP, as 375 000, which includes 335 000 short-term EPWP jobs.

- With regards to economic development in the area of agriculture and agro-processing, the IDP makes reference to:
  - The development of ‘Sustainable Agricultural Villages’, and specifies that ‘the indigent will benefit from this project. Farm infrastructure will be provided and training done to develop entrepreneurs’. It is specified that the responsible department in the CoT is the Agriculture and Environmental Management. The spatial location of these villages is not provided. (See also the template dealing with these villages below.)
  - The establishment of an ‘Economic Development Agency’ for the CoT, which will assist with the sourcing of ‘resources and funding for the implementation of mega projects that the city cannot currently fund’. This could also include the funding for bulk infrastructure. The benefit for
PRINCIPLES/ POLICY IMPACTS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy
• Fully supports the objectives and mechanisms as proposed in the GRDLRP.

Proposals
• The Rooiwal village falls in Zone 1 on the Draft GRDLRP LSM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION / PROJECT RESPONSE
• There is nothing in the IDP of the CoT that does not support the principles or proposals in the draft GRDLRP LSM. Rather, there is strong support for (1) the idea and what it seeks to deliver – i.e. job creation and community development; (2) the sector, i.e. small-scale agriculture and cooperatives; (3) the sector, i.e. agriculture; and (4) the spatial location of the initiative, i.e. in Zone 1.
• The proponents of the GRDLRP should have little difficulty in getting support from the CoT for the project. It will, however, be necessary to participate in the IDP preparation process to get the idea in the public and official eye.
• With regards to the immediate future, the inclusion of the former Metswedeng District Municipality in the CoT will in all likelihood result in a focus on the predominantly rural conditions in these ‘new areas’ to ensure parity with the situation in the CoT. This could be very positive for the GRDLRP.

Table 62: Draft 2013/14 COT IDP Review

YEAR AND STATUS
• Draft 2013/14 IDP Review.
• Date: 28 March 2013

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT
• Review of 2011-2016 IDP.
• Reference is made to the Tshwane 2055 that is being developed, and the importance of connecting the IDP to this document is emphasised. (The IDP is in service to the 2055-strategy.)
• The document is connected to the NDP and it emphasises the key concerns in the NDP Diagnostic Report.
• It is stated that the IDP is in line with the national objectives as articulated in the NDP.
• Makes reference to the merger of Metswedeng with the CTMM and the regionalisation of services in the city.
• Strong reference to the need for IGR is made, especially re the integration of Metswedeng in the CoT.
• High percentages of households have access to basic services, Water provision is highlighted as an issue of concern.
• Indicates strong transport movement from former Kungwini and Nokeng to the city.
• Huge increase in number of households in the city between 2001 and 2011 – population grew by 36%. Households by 50%.
• Economy of the municipality fastest growing in the country in Oct 2012 – 4.4% between 1997 and 2011.

IMPlications for land suitability analysis
Principles/ Policy
• The IDP is connected to the 2009 Local Government Manifesto. One component is “more rural communities benefiting from investments in basic services and empowered to end hunger by productively using the available or redistributed land. Through rural development we seek to modernise the countryside and bring dignity to rural dwellers” (p. 23)

### Proposals

• Stated that the focus of job growth in the municipality is in the previously disadvantaged areas of the city – Ga-Rankuwa, Atteridgeville and Mamelodi. (p. 26) What does this say about rural areas?
• Does say that it is focused on the knowledge economy, but is also focused on agriculture and tourism sectors of the economy (p. 27).
• Basic service delivery a key objective of the IDP.
• Says that both urban and rural development are important to the City (p. 42).
• Broadband for especially previously disadvantaged areas a key COT focus (p. 43). Not sure this includes rural areas.
• The governmental issues re the integration of the former Metswideng are raised (p. 46). Also commits the City to ensure proper service delivery and continuation of capital projects in this area.
• It is mentioned under “Agriculture” that “the merger in CoT has resulted in agriculture taking prominence in the city’s development. A clear rural development strategy supported by the agriculture strategy is being developed” (p. 50).
• “Areas that are rural in nature” are mentioned as an area that needs attention under “Category 2 Issues: Physical Infrastructure Developments and Improvements”. It is stated that due to the low density in these areas, consideration should be given to the provision of “rudimental services such as water, sanitation and energy”. Prioritisation will be done, based on what is needed by the different communities (tribal authorities noted) and the farming communities and other community members, such as farm workers (p. 51).
• Being a draft IDP, it is noted that all ward priorities will be sent to the City and finalised in April and May 2013.
• The IDP is still draft and will be consulted with stakeholders (p. 52).
• Rural projects do not feature as “Strategic Projects” (p. 54).
• “Rainbow City” in the Zone of Choice (the north) prioritises an areas close to where the rural parcels are.
• It is noted that the former Metswideng areas are furthest from opportunities and have the longest travelling distances and lowest provision of social facilities (p. 60).
• The rural areas fall in Region 5, 6 and 7 in the CoT in the north and east and Region 1 and 2 in the north and west (p. 64). These areas get 2.1 % (Region 5), 7.76% (Region 6) and 1.53% (Region 7) of the regional capex allocation (p. 78).
• The Tshwane SDF views the nodes of Ratyon and Cullinan as “Urban Cores” (NDPG) and Bronkhorstspruit as an “Urban Core” and “Metropolitan Node” (p. 68). It is not clear what the City will do in these nodes. It does say what it wants to see in these nodes (p. 72).
• The IDP suggests rural development, growth management and Agri-villages in rural areas inside the growth management areas, and rural management, conservation and preservation in the areas outside these growth management areas. It is not clear where these areas are (p. 73).
• Stinkwater Sustainable Agricultural Village (Ward 105) in Region 5 gets R5 mil per annum in each budget 2013/14 to 2015/16 (p. 80). The same goes for Kleinzonderhout Sustainable Agricultural Village in Region 6 (Ward 17) (p. 81).
• Region 5 gets “water supply to Agricultural Holdings” (renewals/upgrading it seems). This amounts to once-off budgets of R4 mil in two years (p. 88).
• Ekangala Community Library in Region 7, Ward 104 gets R10 mil (a new library) (p. 93).
• Cullinan gets a Library Park – budget R5 mil and it is a new project (Ward 100) (p. 94.).
• Upgrading road from gravel to tar is also budgeted for in Region 7, Wards 102, 103 and 104 (R9, 10 and 15-million) (p. 94).
• Maintenance at Roodeplaat Dam (R6.5 mil Dept of Transport Gauteng) (p. 107).
• The Gauteng Dept of Agriculture and Rural Dev is investing in the Roodeplaat Nature Reserved – *inter alia* a trail, a swimming pool, a new road between the reserve and the mine and a new water pipe network (p. 116, 117) and at the Leeuwfontein Nature Reserve (p. 118-119).
• The Gauteng Dept of Health is spending on clinic upgrading at Cullinan, Rayton, Rethabiseng, Ekangala and Refilwe.
• Rethabiseng gets focus in the form of new houses and housing upgrading (Incremental housing programmes) (p. 139).
• Are we making enough of Wonderboom Airport for exports and imports?
The Regional plans tend to not say much about rural or rural development or agriculture. Tourism is mentioned. It is essentially an urban eye looking at a rural area....

While nothing is said that goes against our suitability map, it is also not as actively supported as much as one may have hoped for.

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The IDP is strongly supportive in principle with what is being proposed in the Zones as proposed.
- In some zones small proposals, some funded by the Gauteng Province is being made.
- It does not make proposals for sizeable investments in the zones as proposed.
- The proposals for the development of the rural zones, as proposed in the CoT, may be of use to the City in preparing and reviewing IDPs in future.

---

**Table 63: Tshwane Metropolitan Spatial Development Framework And The Regional Spatial Development Frameworks For The Seven Regions Of The CoT**

### YEAR AND STATUS

- MSDF Approved on 16 May 2012.
- MSDF worked with: June 2012.
- Discussion below also taken from Council decision on the MSDF dated 16 May 2012.
- RSDF Region 1, 2012.
- RSDF Region 2, 2012.
- RSDF Region 5, 2012.
- RSDF Region 7, 2012.

### DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

- The MSDF and RSDFs seek to assist the City with becoming the “African Capital City of Excellence”. Seven strategic objectives have been identified to achieve this vision. These are:
  - Provide basic services, roads and storm-water;
  - Economic growth and development and job creation;
  - Sustainable communities with clean, healthy and safe environment and integrated social services;
  - Foster participatory democracy and Batho Pele;
  - Promote sound governance;
  - Ensure financial sustainability; and
  - Organisation development and transformation.

- The MSDF and RSDFs respond primarily to:
  - Strategic objective 2 (economic growth and development): Provide strategic direction around infrastructure provision; guide developers and investors; and rural management programmes to improve livelihoods and stimulate development; and
  - Strategic objective 3 (sustainable communities with clean, healthy and a safe environment and integrated social services): Restructure the spatially inefficient City through compaction, densification and Transit Oriented Development; promote sustainable use of land resources; and growth management.

- The objectives of the MSDF and the RSDFs are aimed at dealing with the same spatial aspects, with the latter just dealing with these on a regional, closer-to-the-ground level:
  - Guiding spatial development;
  - Ensuring supporting public investment;
  - Identifying geographic areas where intervention is necessary;
  - Guide local development;
  - Provide an enabling spatial framework for investment;
  - Inform developers of where and what kind of development is desired and will most likely be supported; and
  - Promoting a proactive approach from the side of the state, using public funds to provide the base for effective community and private sector growth and development.

- Aspects that are dealt with and used in the MSDF and RSDF are:
Proposals

- The proposals in the MSDF and the RSDFs support the Draft LSM of the GRDLRP.
- The MSDF makes provision for development corridors to be developed in Zones 1 and 2. These corridors support the higher intensity areas in Zones 1 and 2.
- The nodes of Cullinan, Bronkhorstspruit and Ekangala are identified as “Urban Cores”. Bronkhorstspruit is identified as a “Metropolitan Node”. These are key nodes in the GRDLRP – “Higher intensity rural economy”.
- Provision is made for “tourism nodes” (p. 122). Heritage (including natural) and tourism areas are also seen as strong urban structuring elements. (p. 159).
- Tourism is strongly supported in the Cullinan node, as part of the Tourism and Heritage-proposals in the MSDF.
- The MSDF recognises the Agricultural potential of Region 7 – our Zones 2 and a bit of 1.
- The MSDF recognises:
  - Dinokeng as “Tourism and related services”-investment sector/growth area (Zone 1);
  - Agriculture and agro-processing takes place in Zones 1 and 2; and
  - Mining and beneficiation in Cullinan and Rayton.
- The MSDF recognises agricultural potential in Regions 6 and 7 (primarily our Zones 2 and 3, and a bit of 1).
- It is proposed that an “integrated Agricultural Strategy, incorporating all new regions of the CoT will need to be developed” (p. 98).
- Zones 1 and Zones 2 are recognised as Agricultural Hubs in the MSDF (p. 99).
- Zone 3 is not recognised as such in the MSDF (p. 99).
- Cullinan and Dinokeng are identified as a “tourism node” (p. 124).
- Bronkhorstspruit is seen as a node that requires transport support – it is far from the main economic activities of the city (p. 149).
- “‘Community Agricultural Areas’ are ‘Agricultural Project Areas’ that have been planned to include a range of agricultural activities, including agricultural product beneficiation” (p. 165).
- In Zones 1 and 2 The long-term spatial development concept of the CoT provides for rail development that will connect the nodes of Bronkhorstspruit, Cullinan and Ekangala, as well as a development corridor (the N4) (p. 168).
• In Zone, the N1 is also a corridor, rail is prioritised and Hammanskraal is seen as an urban core. (p. 168).
• Agri-villages and rural tourism is provided for in the capital investment framework (p. 177). These are not spatially described.
• Hammanskraal is described in more detail in the RSDF for Region 2 in more detail (RSDF 2: p. 40).
• “Rural Divisions” are supported up to 1 hectare sizes and more will be allowed in areas where piped water can be provided, “except in cases of high agricultural potential and environmentally sensitive areas” (RSDF 2: p. 52).
• The RSDF for Region 2 provides for rural development east of the N1. West of it is urban development (RSDF 2: p. 63).
• Dinokeng is regarded as a key tourism area (RSDF 2: p. 74).
• Nodes in Region 5 are Rayton, Cullinan and Refilwe. The latter is a residential node. The other two have retail and light industrial functions as well (RSDF 5: 36 and 41-43).
• The agricultural potential of Region 5, our Zone 1 is recognised (RSDF 5: 38).
• Large parts of Region 5 (our Zone 1) fall under GDACE protection (RSDF 5: 64).
• Agriculture is seen as a key driver of economic growth and jobs in Region 7 (our Zone 2 and a piece of 1) (RSDF 7: 39).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEND</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The MSDF and RSDFs strongly support Zones 1, 2 and 3 as rural agricultural hubs. The CoT does, however, recognise that it does not have a rural development strategy as yet, and that this is something that they urgently have to do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The urban edge, and how the CoT deals with the two areas (this side and the other side of the edge) and how it integrates these, are of crucial importance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• It may be that “rural” does not sit easily with the CoT’s vision of being seen as a global city...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 64: Medium-Term Revenue And Expenditure Framework For The CoT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• CoT MTEF approved on 16 May 2012.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• A 559-page document that provides an overview of how the CoT will raise/get revenue and spend it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABLITY ANALYSIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Supports agricultural development with funds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• R3.8 million allocated to Agriculture initiatives under “Special Projects” (p. 44).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Agriculture and Environmental Management get 2.7% (2011/12), 6.43% (2012/13), 3.21% (2013/14) and 2.65% (2014/15) (p. 51).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Agricultural villages get R30.0 mil in the Capital Projects-budget (p. 51).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Region 7 gets smallest slice of the budget (0.79% to 1.53%) and Region 5, 1.81% to 2.22% (p. 58).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sustainable Agricultural Village Programme (SAV) was approved by the Mayoral Committee in August 2011 (p. 59). Says master plan for SAV has been developed and implementation will take place in a phased approach. (p. 60). High-value agriculture is to be targeted (p. 60).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• SAVs are to be established in all the regions. SAVs have already been identified for Regions 5, 7 and 2 (p. 60). One was already operation in Rooiwal in 2012 and another two were to be established in the 2012/13 financial year – one in Region 7 and one in Region 2 (p. 60).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEND</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The Budget supports the SAVs with funding – it goes beyond words.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Funding is directed at the Zones as identified in the draft GRDLRP LSM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 65: Rural Development Strategy For The CoT 2004

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Date: July 2004.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

- Is nearly ten year old.
- Defines rural areas in the CoT as “those areas within the Tshwane area of jurisdiction which fall outside the Gauteng urban edge” (p. 4). [Suggests a view of “rural” and “non-urban” (p. 26 and p. 32 – figures). The whole policy is strongly guided by this Edge (land use management issues) and what it means for rural areas outside it – control (p. 11-12). [Good to know that the author was the author of the Gauteng Urban Edge policy.]
- Focus on developing a comprehensive rural development strategy for the CoT. Seeks to accommodate change in rural areas while still “ensuring the preservation of agriculture, environmental and ecological sensitive areas” (p. 5).
- Uses a classification similar to the one in the GRDLR project for rural areas: Peripheral areas, Agricultural holdings, Farms and Rural settlement areas (p. 6). Argues that only the first three are to be found in the CoT. (p. 8).
- Sees rural development as focused on “poverty alleviation and local economic development” (p. 7).
- Sees the challenges of rural development to connect those living in these areas to the wider economy (p. 8).
- Ties strategy to Gauteng Rural Development Strategy (p. 11).
- Argues that rural development must be incorporated in IDPs (p. 12).
- States that only 3% of the population of Tshwane lived in rural areas in 2004 (p. 25).
- Provides detailed breakdown of those living in “rural” Tshwane.
- Notes that large-scale subdivision has taken place in rural areas in Tshwane and the result is very few large undivided farm portions remaining in the rural parts of Tshwane (p. 39.)
- Argues that the tourism potential in Dinokeng and northern areas of CoT is underutilised. Argues that areas in western and southwestern parts are well utilised for tourism (p. 40).
- Provides very detailed proposals for rural area development.
- Argues that investment in human potential more important than investment in physical infrastructure in rural areas. (p. 40).
- Long list of policy options, but not much that is specific or that seeks to build settlements.
- Emphasises care with subdivision of farm land to be applied (p. 57).
- Emphasises costs of provision of infrastructure in rural areas due to low density and low population (p. 58).
- Ward Committees seen as good vehicles for rural representation (p. 58)
- Provides detailed town planning provisions for rural areas (p. 60-63).

#### IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

##### Principle/Policy

- Supports the proposals and does not contest them in proposals made.

##### Proposals

- Proposes agri-villages in areas south of Garankuwa and Klip-Kruisfonteing (p. 64).
- Hartbeespoort Dam area, Dinokeng and land towards Cradle of Humankind earmarked for tourism (p. 66).
- Area between Hammanskraal and northern parts of urban development (Zambezi Road) earmarked for rural and agricultural and to be kept as such (p. 65).
- Winterveld for economic development (p. 65-66).
- Proposes Local SDFs for rural areas in CoT, also to guide decision-making in LUM-applications (p. 67).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE
EKURHULENI METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY DOCUMENTS

Table 66: Ekurhuleni Eastern Service Delivery Region Spatial Development Framework

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• EMM ERSDF 2007.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Successor to the approved 2003 -2004 RSDF.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:

- SDFs aim to guide private and public investment and future growth.
- RSDFs are formulated with the Metropolitan SDF as a basis, but are more detailed and specific. The Regional Framework is thus a refinement of the Metropolitan SDF indicating specific land use proposals for pockets of land and providing adequate detail to assess development proposals (p. iv).
- The Eastern SDR comprises the areas of Benoni, Daveyton, Etwatwa, Springs, Nigel, KwaThema, Tsakane, Duduza and Brakpan. The economic structure of the Eastern SDR is focused on the established but declining industrial areas of the Far East Rand, characterised by heavy industries. It borders onto Mpumalanga Province in the east. Benoni, Brakpan, Springs and Nigel are the four of the nine Central Business Districts in the Eastern Region of Ekurhuleni. These areas hold considerable public and private investment and the Metropolitan Spatial Development Framework promotes the protection and regeneration of these areas, to make optimal use of these resources (p. xii).

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

- Support principle of job creation, and poverty alleviation in rural as well as the development of related mixed use developments in agriculture and peri urban regions.
- This document further reaffirms the 2003/2004 spatial vision and subscribes to the planning principles, structuring elements, policies, and bylaws of EMM (p. i).
- This document subscribes to the legislative imperatives of National and Provincial tiers of Government (p. i).

Proposals

- This SDF corresponds primarily with Zone 4 (the Nigel zone).
- It provides for:  
  o The following category: peripheral land uses such as agri-holdings and agri-areas where a diversity of land uses may occur including rural residential, agriculture, light service industry, commercial uses, hospitality uses and tourism related activities (p. xiv);  
  o Service upgrading areas in marginalised areas (p. xiv); and  
  o Mixed use development in the rural area.  
  o Strategic interventions (economic): wealth creation in projects in agriculture sector and increasing agriculture export – backed by an agriculture strategy.
- Need to identify strategic larger parcels of land in the eastern region to limit fragmentation and expensive service delivery (p. xxvii).
- There are the areas outside the UDB and peripheral use zone where extensive agriculture should be protected and promoted. The provision of services, such as health, education, retail etc. should also be catered for in these areas (p. xiv).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- The SDF only indicates in light green agriculture areas and no real specific spatial detail of agri-related developments and rural development.
- Need for ERSDF to be amended to include more detail resulting from the RDLR project.
- This SDF mainly speaks to Development zone 4 (the Nigel Zone) and supports the Small-Scale Agri-Based Rural Development on the eastern periphery of the Springs area and also provides for peripheral land...
uses such as agri-holdings and agri-areas where a diversity of land uses may occur including rural residential, agriculture, light service industry, commercial uses, hospitality uses and tourism related activities (p. xiv).

- The SDF further supports the Large-Scale Agriculture and extensive agriculture in the far eastern portion of the zone, as indicated on the Potential Typology Map.
- Also the development of large scale farming and the need to identify and protect strategic larger parcels of land in the far eastern portion of Zone 4 (east of Nigel) to limit fragmentation and expensive service delivery (p. xxvi).

### Table 67: Ekurhuleni Northern Service Delivery Region Spatial Development Framework

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NRSDF approved in 2007.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- The NSDR Development Concept includes a number of development objectives – the main objectives relevant to rural development are the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Urban Development Boundary: It is the intention of the Urban Development Boundary to optimise the utilization of opportunities for development within this boundary and promote the development of a more compact urban environment that is economically more sustainable and preserves the natural environment, as well as land with high agricultural potential in the surrounding rural areas;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Management of urban sprawl and the containment of development to protect the natural environment and the agricultural potential;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o To promote the formulation of an environmental strategy for the NSDR to address, suggest actions and allocate responsibility to direct sustainable environmental management in the NSDR;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Strategy for the protection and conservation of areas that are sensitive from an ecological and hydrological perspective; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Protection and conservation of areas that have a high potential or value for agriculture (p. 122 – 118).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Principles/Policy

- The NSDR Development Concept supports:
  - The principle of job creation, and poverty alleviation in rural as well as the development of related mixed use developments in agriculture and peri-urban regions;
  - Conservation of agriculture and hydro systems in regions;
  - A strong Urban Development Boundary and the management of urban sprawl to preserve the natural environment;
  - Land with high agricultural potential in the surrounding rural areas (p. 122 – 118);
  - The protection and conservation of areas that are sensitive from an ecological and hydrological perspective; and
  - The protection and conservation of areas that have a high potential for agriculture or value (p. 122 – 118).

#### Proposals

- This SDF partly overlaps with the southern parts of zone 1 and 2 (the Bapsfontein, Rayton, Cullinan areas, see also Tshwane templates and proposals.
- Provide for strong conservation of natural areas and hydrological systems, wetlands, streams and pans as well as grassland areas next to hydro systems (p. 132).
- Protection and conservation of areas that have a high potential or value for agriculture (p. 133).
- The Gauteng Agricultural Potential Atlas (GAPA) and further analysis by the project team were taken into consideration during this analysis.
- Four categories of agriculture protection areas:
  - **Low-medium** (light brown areas): Areas falling outside of the urban edge will require protection for the predominant purposes of agricultural production. Applications for development must meet the basic requirement of supporting agriculture or the agricultural communities.
The objective is to integrate the disadvantaged communities of the southern region into the urban area.

This SDF partly overlaps with the southern parts of Zone 1 and 2 (the Bapsfontein, Rayton, Cullinan areas (see also Tshwane templates and proposals).

The area falling outside of the urban edge (the largest part of zone 3, north-east of Bapsfontein), will require protection for the predominant purposes of agricultural production.

The northern and north-eastern sector of the Northern SDR (generally known as the Bapsfontein area) is earmarked for “extensive agricultural”. This entire area is situated outside the “urban development boundary” and consists predominantly of natural open space, crop farming, rural residential uses, as well as the Sentra Rand railway-shunting yard in the eastern corner of the sector (p. 159).

The Gauteng Spatial Development Framework (GSDF, 2000) has identified several primary rural service centres (known also as primary towns) outside the Urban Edge which has links with the urban areas while providing essential services to the surrounding rural areas. These rural service centres which form part of the provincial settlement hierarchy include inter alia Rayton, Bronkhorstspuit, Cullinan, Carltonville, Heidelberg and Bapsfontein in the Northern SDF area of Ekurhuleni (p. 160).

Table 68: Ekurhuleni Southern Service Delivery Region Spatial Development Framework

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposal</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- The NSDR has been categorized into the following eight constraint zones (p. 151): (1) No to low constraint zone; (2) Geotechnical constraint zone; (3) Ecological/hydrological constraint zone; (4) Agricultural and geotechnical constraint zone; (5) Agricultural and ecological/hydrological constraint zone; (6) Geotechnical, ecological/hydrological and agricultural constraint zone; (7) Geotechnical, ecological/hydrological and agricultural constraint zone; and (8) Agricultural constraint zone.

- The northern and north-eastern sector of the Northern SDR (generally known as the Bapsfontein area) is earmarked for “extensive agricultural”. This entire area is situated outside the “urban development boundary” and consists predominantly of natural open space, crop farming, rural residential uses, as well as the Sentra Rand railway-shunting yard in the eastern corner of the sector (p. 159).

- The Gauteng Spatial Development Framework (GSDF, 2000) has identified several primary rural service centres (known also as primary towns) outside the Urban Edge which has links with the urban areas while providing essential services to the surrounding rural areas. These rural service centres which form part of the provincial settlement hierarchy include inter alia Rayton, Bronkhorstspuit, Cullinan, Carltonville, Heidelberg and Bapsfontein in the Northern SDF area of Ekurhuleni (p. 160).

- Provide for mixed use development in rural area.

- Figure 16 is important (p. 137). It indicates environmental and agriculture potential areas.

- This SDF partly overlaps with the southern parts of Zone 1 and 2 (the Bapsfontein, Rayton, Cullinan areas (see also Tshwane templates and proposals).

- The area falling outside of the urban edge (the largest part of zone 3, north-east of Bapsfontein), will require protection for the predominant purposes of agricultural production.

- The northern and north-eastern sector of the Northern SDR (generally known as the Bapsfontein area) is earmarked for “extensive agricultural” and hence supports the Large Scale Agri-category as indicated on the Draft LSM.
fabric to establish a full range of services within convenient distance for entire communities by way of multi-purpose service delivery centre.

- Provide for category on (1) extensive agriculture and (2) peripheral land uses where related and supportive mixed uses should be supported such as: rural residential, agriculture, light/service industries, commercial uses, hospitality uses and tourism related activities (p.18).
- The Ekurhuleni strategic plan identifies 7 thrusts which should be foremost when formulating any plan; amongst others poverty alleviation, local economic development and job creation (p. 16).
- Land uses that are rural in nature would be more desirable, and should therefore be promoted outside the UDB, rather than inside it (p. 17).
- Land uses complying with the following criteria should be allowed in the rural areas outside the urban development boundary:
  - Extensive agriculture;
  - Conservation areas/nature reserves;
  - Tourism and related activities e.g. curio markets;
  - Recreational facilities e.g. hiking trails/hotels/game lodges;
  - Farm stalls and home industries;
  - Rural residential uses/agricultural holdings in specific areas; and
  - Any other related development/service (p. 17 – 18).
- It is proposed that low intensity land uses like agricultural holdings, rural residential uses, low intensity service industries (typically those occurring on agricultural holdings) as well as urban agriculture be promoted in the fringe area around the urban development boundary. These uses should support and protect the urban development boundary and serve as a barrier for the future expansion of the urban environment. It is also necessary to optimally utilise opportunities for urban agriculture in this area, especially those areas near to the disadvantaged communities. The potential of the Sentraland area to the north of Daveyton-Etwatwa holds some potential for LED development.
- Peripheral uses (p. 39): These include agricultural holdings and agricultural areas where a diversity of land uses may occur, including rural residential, agriculture, light service industries, commercial uses, hospitality uses and tourism related activities. The peripheral uses to the south support and protect the urban development boundary and serve as a barrier for the future expansion of the urban environment. The optimal utilisation of these areas for peripheral uses will support the disadvantaged communities of Thokoza, Vosloorus and Katlehong.
- Provides for mixed use development in the rural area.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- The SDF only indicates in light green, agriculture areas in the far south (south to Vosloorus) and no real specific spatial detail of agri-related developments and rural development.
- The SDF supports peripheral land uses in line with the Potential Development Typology map (northern section of zone), where related and supportive mixed uses should be supported such as: rural residential, agriculture, light/service industries, commercial uses, hospitality uses and tourism related activities (p. 18).

---

**Table 69: Kwa-Thema LSDF, 2005**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- Kwa-Thema LSDF 2005.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:**

- Spatial development framework for region – to guide private and public investment and future growth;
- Kwatsaduza is located in the southeastern quadrant of the Ekurhuleni Municipal Area and forms part of the Eastern Service Delivery Region. Kwatsaduza is made up of Tsakane, Kwa-Thema and Duduza. Kwatsaduza is surrounded by a number of central business districts, comprising Brakpan and Springs, to the north of the study area, and Nigel, to the southeast of the study area (p. 14);
- Tsakane, Kwa-Thema and Duduza are functionally a single spatial unit and the spatial planning of these areas is therefore dealt with in unison. As such an overall development framework will therefore be formulated for the Kwatsaduza area, which in turn will guide the planning of the 3 individual urban
**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- Support principle of job creation, poverty alleviation, conservation of limited agricultural land, and urban agriculture.

**Proposals**

- The Kwatsaduza area is situated directly to the north and outside of Zone 5, directly to the west and northwest of Nigel.
- There are small areas, which are classified as having high agricultural potential, however the majority of the study area is classified as having “very low-none” or “moderate” agricultural potential (p. 44).
- Withok Estates is a small holding area located west of Tsakane. The land use survey found many of these small holding to be vacant. The Withok Estates, west of Kwa-Thema, should be used for peripheral land uses associated with agricultural holdings. According to the MSDF, the area south of the Withok Estates should be developed as extensions of Tsakane. Land available for development in all the Service Delivery Regions, are on the periphery and increase the marginalisation of the poor and low income earners (p. 200).
- A specific need exists for the establishment of urban agriculture within the greater Kwatsaduza region. A large number of residents in the area are skilled agricultural workers who have been replaced from farm areas surrounding Kwatsaduza. These farm workers could positively contribute to development of the area and a strategy is required for the accommodation of these activities as part of the development of the area (p. 201).
- To address the above, it is proposed that the area south of the PWV16 and west of Tsakane be utilized for urban agricultural purposes (p. 88).
- Large tracts of agricultural land, mining land and industrial areas separate the various residential areas in the Kwatsaduza Area. In particular, mining activity limits expansion possibilities west of Tsakane.
- Most of the non-urbanised land west of Kwatsaduza is high-potential agricultural land. Protection of this valuable natural asset limits expansion possibilities to the west of Kwatsaduza (p. 88-89).
- The area south of the PWV 16 and west of Tsakane is to be utilized for urban agricultural purposes. This area falls within the buffer zone of the neighbouring slimes dam and is therefore not suited for urbanized uses. In addition to this, urban agriculture usage can be accommodated on vacant land parcels within established areas subject to controls and compatibility with surrounding land uses. It is further accepted that these uses can be accommodated on an interim basis only, until the individual properties are to be developed in terms of its allocated zoning (p. 208).

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- Local SDF mainly supports urban agriculture within the greater Kwatsaduza region.
- The protection of non-urbanised and high-potential agricultural land to the west of Kwatsaduza (p. 88-89) (the part that corresponds with northern tip of Zone 5).
- The area south of the PWV 16 and west of Tsakane is to be utilized for urban agricultural purposes.
- See detail boundaries (northern part) of zone 5 – to possibly (functionally) include this Kwatsaduza area in the zone.

---

**Table 70: Tsakani LSDF, 2005**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- Tsakani LSDF 2005

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:**

- Tsakane, Kwa-Thema and Duduza are functionally a single spatial unit and the spatial planning of these areas is therefore dealt with in unison. As such an overall development framework will therefore be formulated for the Kwatsaduza area, which in turn will guide the planning of the 3 individual urban areas (p. 1).
- The detailed LSDFs will also serve as a tool to manage the future spatial development of each township and ensure the coordinated and integrated land use development of these townships with its
IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principles/Policy

- Supports the principle of job creation, poverty alleviation, small scale farming, urban agriculture and the protection of high-potential agricultural land and commercial farming.

Proposals

- The Kwatsaduza area is situated directly to the north and outside of Zone 5, directly to the west and northwest of Nigel.
- Due to the proximity of the mining belt, the study area is also impacted on by a number of slimes dam buffer zones.
- In terms of the urban edge policy, only rural developments and tourism related developments and agriculture are supported outside the urban edge. The area west of is considered as land with high agricultural potential, which should be protected at all costs.
- Kwatsaduza is one of four major concentrations of historically disadvantaged communities in Ekurhuleni (exclusion area). The eastern service delivery region is perhaps the most disadvantaged within the region as it is geographically the most removed from the economic core of the region, and is also dependant on economic sectors that are largely in decline, such as large manufacturing and the mining industry. The key challenges, however, remain sustainable and urban rural integration urban-rural balance: not developing the one at the cost of the other (p. 125-126).
- Promoting agriculture in a region has various advantages. Agriculture is less capital intensive than mining and manufacturing. As a job creator it is also less costly than other sectors. It also is one of the few economic sectors that have the adaptability to complement other economic sectors.
- Although the Study Area is largely urban, Kwatsaduza is surrounded by a number of large-scale commercial farms, as well as high-potential agricultural land to the west of the Study Area. The commercial farms in particular, impact upon the eastward expansion possibilities of Kwatsaduza, as was discussed above (p. 169).
- Protect High-Potential Agriculture and Commercial Farming: Most of the land surrounding Kwatsaduza is utilized for commercial farming purposes. In addition, high-potential agricultural exists to the west of the study area, as illustrated. It is of essence that urban intrusion into these areas be limited by promoting higher-density urban development close to the existing urban areas. Due to the extent of commercial agriculture surrounding Kwatsaduza, it will involve sacrificing some commercial farmlands to extend this township in future. However, this extension must be limited through the application of higher residential densities (p. 169).
- Promote small-scale agriculture: The implementation of a small-scale farming programme can broaden the economic base of an area and create new employment opportunities. Land is available within Kwatsaduza that cannot be urbanized due to the buffer zones of existing tailings dams in and around Kwatsaduza. The area between Tsakane-west and the K109 is of relevance. This creates the opportunity for small-scale farming, focused on giving disadvantaged beneficiaries access to land for agricultural purposes. Using the area west of Tsakane for small-scale agriculture will also be a natural southwards extension of the Withok estate. With an abundance of water resources, as well as high- and medium-potential agricultural land located west of the study area, small-scale farming should be feasible within Kwatsaduza (p. 196).
- A specific need exists for the establishment of urban agriculture within the greater Kwatsaduza region. A large number of residents in the area are skilled agricultural workers who have been replaced from farm areas surrounding Kwatsaduza. These farm workers could positively contribute to development of the area and a strategy is required for the accommodation of these activities as part of the development of the area.
- The area south of the PWV 16 and west of Tsakane is to be utilized for urban agricultural purposes. This area falls within the buffer zone of the neighbouring slimes dam and is therefore not suited for urbanized uses. In addition, urban agriculture usage can be accommodated on vacant land parcels within established areas subject to controls and compatibility with surrounding land uses. It is further accepted that these uses can be accommodated on an interim basis only, until the individual properties are to be developed in terms of its allocated zoning (p. 196).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE
**Table 71: Kwatsaduza LSDF**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date uncertain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Area surrounded by a number of core areas. These are Brakpan, Springs and Nigel, which contain the only significant CBDs and industrial areas within the Greater Kwatsaduza Region.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Although the Study Area is largely urban, Kwatsaduza is surrounded by a number of large-scale commercial farms, as well as high-potential agricultural land to the west of the Study Area. The commercial farms in particular, impact upon the eastward expansion possibilities of Kwatsaduza (p. 176).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Spatial Development Framework aims to guide the future development of this area through a set of nodes, corridors and urban precincts (p. 1).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Principle/Policy</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Support principle of job creation, and poverty alleviation, small scale farming and conservation of high potential agriculture and the development of small scale farming opportunities</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Proposals</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Kwatsaduza area is situated directly to the north and outside of zone 5, directly to the west and northwest of Nigel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available land in and around Kwatsaduza is affected by a number of constraints such as mining operations, red data species and high-potential agricultural land. It is necessary that these constraints be identified to assess what land remains that is available for the expansion of Kwatsaduza.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify areas with high potential agriculture and informal settlements (p. 177).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Land for expansion is a problem – can threaten agriculture land.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawing an urban edge will also protect valuable agricultural land and ecologically sensitive areas from urban encroachment (p. 133).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Promoting agriculture in a region has various advantages. Agriculture is less capital intensive than mining and manufacturing. As a job creator it is also less costly than other sectors. It also is one of the few economic sectors that have the adaptability to complement other economic sectors (p. 176).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Although the Study Area is largely urban, Kwatsaduza is surrounded by a number of large-scale commercial farms, as well as high-potential agricultural land to the west of the Study Area. The commercial farms in particular, impact upon the eastward expansion possibilities of Kwatsaduza (see p. 176-177).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protect High-Potential Agriculture and Commercial Farming:</strong> Most of the land surrounding Kwatsaduza is utilized for commercial farming purposes. In addition, high-potential agricultural exists to the west of the study area, as illustrated. It is of essence that urban intrusion into these areas be limited by promoting higher-density urban development close to the existing urban areas. Due to the extent of commercial agriculture surrounding Kwatsaduza, it will involve sacrificing some commercial farmlands to extend this township in future. However, this extension must be limited through the application of higher residential densities (p. 177).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enforce Urban Edge:</strong> Demarcating an urban edge has the specific purpose to prevent uncontrolled urban sprawl and in this way contributes to protecting valuable agricultural land. For this reason, the proposed urban edge is amended to accommodate the future higher-density expansion of Kwatsaduza, and then is strictly enforced to protect high-potential agricultural land and commercial farming areas around Kwatsaduza (p. 177).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Promote Small-Scale Agricultural:</strong> The implementation of a small-scale farming programme can broaden the economic base of an area and create new employment opportunities. Land is available within Kwatsaduza that cannot be urbanized due to the buffer zones of existing tailings dams in and around Kwatsaduza. The area between Tsakane-west and the K109 is of relevance. This creates the opportunity for small-scale, focused on giving disadvantaged beneficiaries access to land for agricultural...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
pursues. Using the area west of Tsakane for small-scale agriculture will also be a natural southwards extension of the Withok Estate. With an abundance of water resources, as well as high- and medium-potential agricultural land located west of the Study Area, small-scale farming should be feasible within Kwatsaduza (p. 177).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- SDF supports growth management and urban edge to protect valuable agricultural land, the development of small scale agricultural land, commercial farming and the protection and development of high potential agricultural land;
- See detail boundaries (northern part) of Zone 5 to possibly (functionally) include the Kwatsaduza area in the zone.

### Table 72: Duduza LSDF (Eastern Region)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Duduza LSDF October 2005.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The SDF focus on Duduza within the greater Kwatsaduza area. The role and function of Duduza within this greater area was assessed and principles were defined to integrate Duduza with the other urban areas of Kwatsaduza (Tsakane and Kwa-Thema) (p. 5).
- Objectives and strategies focus on issues such as infill development and the containment of urban sprawl, housing and the upgrading of informal settlements, corridor development and public transport, and the development of municipal owned land. Based on the objectives and strategies, a spatial Development Concept was drafted for Duduza. This Development Concept illustrates proposed nodes and corridors, urban linkages, and the promotion of positive development trends and patterns (p. 7).
- The following spatial challenges face Kwatsaduza:
  - Kwatsaduza is one of four major concentrations of historically disadvantaged communities in the Ekurhuleni Metro area situated on the outskirts of the urban areas, furthest removed from where the bulk of the job opportunities are situated. These four complexes accommodate approximately 65% of the total population of the Ekurhuleni Metro;
  - The Eastern Service Delivery Region is perhaps the most disadvantaged within the region as it is geographically the most removed from the economic core of the region, and is also dependent on economic sectors that are largely in decline, such as large manufacturing and the mining industry;
  - One of the key challenges, however, remains the integration of Kwa-Thema, Tsakane and Duduza within the context of a relatively limited range of economic opportunities;
  - From a spatially structural point of view, the region is fairly disjointed, although the north-south corridor, linking Nigel to Springs, provides some opportunities for integrated development (the MSDF proposes a strategy towards the infill and intensification of this so-called Eastern Activity Belt); and
  - Large tracts of agricultural land, mining land and industrial areas separating the various residential areas in the Kwatsaduza Area (in particular, mining activity limits expansion possibilities west of Tsakane) (p. 90).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- Support principle of tourism agriculture protection and formalisation in certain agricultural areas as well as urban agriculture

**Proposals**

- The Kwatsaduza area is situated directly to the north and outside of zone 5, directly to the west and northwest of Nigel.
- Approximately 50% of the study area is classified as an Important Site in terms of C-Plan (GDACE, 2003a), due to the presence of suitable Red Data bird and plant habitat (Figure 14) (p. 69).
- There are small areas which are classified as having high agricultural potential, however the majority of the study area is classified as having “very low-none” or “moderate” agricultural potential (p.70).
• In terms of the Urban Edge policy, only rural developments and tourism related developments and agriculture are supported outside the urban edge (p. 72).
• Expansion of the study area is severely restricted by existing environmental constraints in the form of the Spaarwater pan and slime dams with associated buffer zones (p. 72).
• The Areas to the south and north of the site are further indicated as high potential agricultural land.
• High track of vacant land along the central parts of the township area are undeveloped due to flood-lines and geotechnical constraints. The reinstatement and eventual use of these areas needs to be considered especially in the light of a need for the introduction of urban agriculture.
• The Sonstraal Agricultural area situated between Tsakane and Duduza is presently used on a formal and informal basis for unauthorized industrial and commercial activities. The formalization of the area need to be regarded as an opportunity and priority (p. 87).
• The Spaarwater area is regarded as an irreplaceable environmental area and the area together with historical sites in the larger area creates specific opportunities for the development of tourism facilities in the area (p.87).
• The Duduza area contains various land parcels unsuitable for residential purposes. Numerous enquiries have over time being received for the utilization of this and other land for the purposes of urban agriculture. No mechanism is in place for the facilitation and accommodation of these enquiries and a policy on urban agriculture is required (p. 87).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- SDF supports principle of tourism agriculture, protection of agricultural areas as well as urban agriculture.
- See detail boundaries (northern part) of Zone 5 to possibly (functionally) include this Kwatsaduza area in the zone.

---

**Table 73: Mayfield And Surrounding Areas Precinct Plan**

### YEAR AND STATUS

• Mayfield and Surrounding Areas Precinct Plan, October 2005.

### DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:

- The focus of the Precinct Plan is to identify priority areas for implementation in Mayfield from the Planning Framework and conduct detailed planning for these areas. The Precinct Plan also took cognisance of the new national and provincial housing policy directives which emerged after the April 2004 elections (p. 4).
- In regional, context the Mayfield area represents the expansion area to the north and northwest of the Daveyton/Etwatwa complex in the Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality. The study area is defined by Du Randt Road to the north, the PWV3 route and railway line to the east, road reserve of route K86 to the south and Putfontein Road to the west (p. 9).
- The agricultural potential of the area is classified as high in some areas and low in others. The area covered by the Blesbokspruit is generally cited as having low agricultural potential (see p. 38).
- Some of the portions of Farm Putfontein 26-1R in the southwest of the study area are classified as having high agricultural potential (E-land, 2003) (see p. 38).

### IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

#### Principle/Policy

- Support principle of tourism agriculture protection and formalisation in certain agricultural areas as well as urban agriculture.
- Focus on community upliftment, poverty alleviation and food security.

#### Proposals

- High agricultural potential in some areas (Putfontein in the south west of the study area) and low in others, (Blesbokspruit) (see map).
- Does not support agriculture in the midst of the urban area (p. 39), and doubts the need for agri-villages or urban agriculture in such areas.
- High ecological potential in some areas (Blesbokspruit).
• Proposed Umgababa Agri-village has been incorporated into the Development Framework (p. 61). This village could provide the opportunity for the formalisation of the informal settlements currently located on the western portion of Portion 5 Knoppiesfontein, which cannot be used for any other purposes due to dolomite.

• Framework support agri-villages north of the urban Development Boundary and make optimal use of land not suitable for residential purposes. These uses should be focused on community upliftment, poverty alleviation and food security.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

• SDF supports Support principle of tourism agriculture protection and formalisation in certain agricultural areas as well as urban agriculture.

• Possible dispute between GDACE and EMM on the use of agricultural land in the area. GDACE does not want to consider anything else than agriculture on this land, whilst EMM is looking at alternatives such as settlements (p. 45).

Table 74: EMM LUMS Policies 2012 (Under Revision)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2012 (under revision)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:

• The following topics/issues are covered in the policies: Accommodation Establishment Policy; Crèche Policy; Home Enterprise Policy; Mobile Telecommunication’s Policy; Placement And Use Of Shipping Containers Policy; Second Dwelling Policy; Spaza Shop Policy; Street Naming Policy; Tavern Policy; Policy on Restriction of Access; Policy for Bulk Service contributions towards Water, Waste Water and Electricity.

• To guide Land Use Management applications and decision making.

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

• Not relevant to the project.

Proposals

• Not relevant to the project.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION / PROJECT RESPONSE

• Lack of Policies for rural development and rural areas, e.g. on agri-villages.

• Additional policies for rural areas are needed – to be investigated by EMM.

Table 75: Urban Edge Policy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approved by Mayoral Committee June 2003</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:

• To guide Land Use Management applications and decision making and to manage and contain the future growth of the metro area.

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

• Growth management; smart growth, compact development; conservation and protection of agricultural land.

Proposals
• Land uses on agricultural holdings and farms outside the urban edge should support the urban edge by promoting active farming and agriculture.
• Peripheral land use (between urban and rural) must be managed and planned carefully to prevent land use occurring outside the urban edge.
• Policy supports the development of service centres or multi-purpose community centre in rural areas and periphery, to give rural communities access to community services and economic opportunities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- Policy very relevant for the Gauteng rural study – it supports the protection of valuable agricultural land.
- No direct relevance to Potential Development Typogies.

---

Table 76: EMM Growth And Development Strategy (GDSS) 2025

**YEAR AND STATUS**
Approved by Mayoral Committee June 2003.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The GDS is a high level strategy and not a policy (p. 4).
- It is intended to build a common vision and purpose across traditional barriers between government, private sector and civil society.
- It provides a framework and strategic reference for all EMM Plans.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- Growth management; smart growth, compact development; conservation and protection of agricultural land and equity.
- Supports principles in SPLUMBS – productive city, sustainable city, inclusive city, well governed city.

**Proposals**

- Focuses strongly on rural/agricultural development to the north east of the region and in the central portion to the south of the Metro (p. 7).
- Focuses on disadvantaged communities in the outskirts of the main urban area, e.g. Tembisa, the Katorus complex, the Kwatpaduza complex and the Daveyton/Etwatwa complex.
- Protection of high value agricultural land outside the urban edge.
- Promotion of bio-agriculture and permaculture.
- Urban agriculture close to marginalised township areas.
- Strong focus on environmental management.
- Respect urban edge.
- Good connectivity and infrastructure through the area.
- Focus on ICT to improve connectivity and the smart society.
- Key focus areas (p. 35): Economic diversification; job creation; skills development; investment promotion and economic transformation; poverty and unemployment; human settlements; healthcare; safety and security, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- Strategy very relevant for the Gauteng rural study.
- Emphasis on rural/agricultural development to the north east of the region and in the central portion to the south of the metro.
- Focus on disadvantaged communities in the outskirts of the main urban area, e.g. Tembisa, the Katorus complex, the Kwatpaduza complex and the Daveyton/Etwatwa complex.
- Promotion of bio-agriculture and permaculture.
- Urban agriculture close to marginalised township areas.
- See detail boundaries (northern part) of Zone 4 to possibly (functionally), include this
Table 77: EMM Economic Strategy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Date unknown.</td>
<td>- The EMM Economic Strategy is a high level strategy intended to stimulate and guide economic growth in the region.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- To ensure economic growth and stability a spread of all economic sectors in the regional economy it is essential, with the primary sector of agriculture being firmly in place to build food security.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Strategic Interventions on agriculture are backed up by an agricultural strategy adopted by the council (no page number in doc). This includes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>o Two areas focused on the development of agricultural exports (flower growing and medicinal herbs) are being piloted. This fits in with the provincial strategy to make the best possible use of the richest agricultural soil in Gauteng as well as exploit the facilities of the Rand Airport, “city-deep” and the Johannesburg international airport. A process to link into the agricultural development programme steering committee set up by the LED Department is also a part of this intervention; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>o The marketing of agricultural products in South Africa was regulated until 1994 through commodity boards. Currently marketing services are deregulated and in the hands of the private sector. The Springs Fresh Produce Market belongs to Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality and provides a marketing service to the agricultural sector. The restructuring of the Springs Fresh Produce Market will cover employment equity, the broadening of the base of agents and suppliers, increasing access to economic opportunities for local people, and restructuring the ownership of the market to ensure that the Municipality derives revenue from the investment in the property as well as, encouraging the agricultural sector in the region to play a decisive role in the operation of the market are key points linked to this intervention. A task team to oversee this process has been set up.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

- Equality – to provide economic opportunities to all – equally; and to enhance the agricultural sector as an economic driver

Proposal

- To ensure economic growth and spread of all economic activities in all sectors in the regional economy.
- Agricultural sector to build food security.
- Increasing agricultural exports – flower growing and medicinal herbs.
- To create LED in these sectors.
- Regulation of agri markets – to be reviewed and to allow opportunities for operation of these markets in key areas.
- Promote innovation and investment.
- Strong focus on skills development.

SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE / CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- Strategy very relevant for the Gauteng rural study but too silent on rural development;
- Importance of food security; agri export opportunities and the need for agri-markets where opportunities exist.

Table 78: EMM Agriculture Development Policy
YEAR AND STATUS

• Strategy adopted 12 August 2002.

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

• The Agriculture Development Policy aims to provide guidelines and policy for future development and management of the agricultural sector in this region.

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

• Focus on food security, job creation, LED, utilisation of resources.

Proposals

• Strong focus on urban agriculture and opportunities for people at different levels of income (p. 6).
• Focus on food security and proximity to markets and job creation.
• Creating access for disadvantaged to agri-opportunities and for food security – see also national policy (DACEL).
• Promotion of competitiveness and profitability of agri enterprises.
• Enhancement of farmers’ capacities in the utilisation of resources.
• Skills development in this sector.
• Food security and poverty alleviation projects (p. 12).
• See also projects: Sizanani farm and Vlakfontein projects (p 10-11).
• Emphasise the role of LED in agricultural development.

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

• Strategy very relevant for the Gauteng rural study but too silent on rural development.
• Importance of food security; agri export opportunities and the need for agri markets where opportunities exist.
• For implementation part, see important ideas and strategies in document (p. 15-30).
• No direct spatial reference to potential Development Typologies zones and addresses agriculture in general.
• See also projects: Sizanani farm and Vlakfontein projects (p. 10-11).

Table 79: EMM Local Economic Development Policy

YEAR AND STATUS

• EMM Local Economic Development Policy (undated).

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

• The EMM Local Economic Development Policy aims to provide guidelines and policy for future development and management of the Local Economic Development sector in this region.
• To guide economic and social development at a local level.

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

• LED Framework has ten policy thrusts (no page numbering in document):
  o Local production for local need;
  o A cooperative movement to represent community-based interventions in the local economy;
  o A skills development network;
  o Develop and sustain urban and commercial agriculture to build food security;
  o Promote Waste Recycling and Reusable Energy;
  o Build Local Development Capital;
  o Ensure Participatory and Integrated Planning;
  o Maintain Linkages with the Industrial base;
  o Facilitate and Grow SMMEs; and
  o Affirm Local Procurement.
• These policy thrusts are based on eight development principles:
  o People Focus, putting the poor first;
Proposals

- With regard to Policy 4 above, the need was identified to develop and sustain urban and commercial agriculture to build food security. With regard to this policy, the document states the following:
  - “Development strategies must incorporate environmental consequences in the course of planning. Measures such as land reform, provision of basic infrastructure, housing and targeted rural assistance (including extension services), and the maintenance of food security should ultimately reduce pressure on the natural environment. The RDP aims to create a restructured agricultural sector that spreads the ownership base, encourages small-scale agriculture, further develops the commercial sector and increases production and employment. Agriculture should be oriented towards the provision of affordable food to meet the basic needs of the population and towards household food security. Support services provided by the democratic government, including marketing, finance and access to cooperatives, must concentrate on small and resource-poor farmers, especially women. This requires a shift from the current pattern of expensive and inefficient support for commercial farmers, as well as reform of the marketing boards and agricultural cooperatives” (no page numbering);
  - Stimulate local production and commerce – for local need;
  - Utilise institutional arrangements that can stimulate community initiatives;
  - Focus on skills development and networks to enhance this;
  - Recycling and reusable energy;
  - Focus on urban agriculture;
  - Partnerships with institutions;
  - Promotion of SMMEs, micro enterprises and local industrial hives;
  - Important linking the micro with the macro policies and economies;
  - Stimulate and encourage beneficiation of local mineral and manufactured products;
  - Community involvement;
  - Linkages with all spheres and sectors of government;
  - Need for urban agriculture friendly legislation; and
  - Critical programmes identified include urban and rural development, industrial strategy, support for small and micro enterprise (including small-scale farming and mining), job creation, and land reform (no page numbering).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- Importance of food security and the need for LED development and skills development – more lenient legislation and focus on partnerships.
- For implementation part, see important ideas and strategies in document.
- No direct spatial reference to potential Development Typologies zones and addresses Local Economic Development in general.

### Table 80: EMM High Density Policy

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- 2005 (status unclear).

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The EMM High Density Policy aims to provide guidelines and policy for future planning, development and management of medium density housing within the subsidy bracket.
- Focus on densification; sprawl costs; compaction; and mixed land-use.
**Principle/Policy**
- Densification and prevention of urban sprawl.

**Proposals**
- No real relevant proposals.
- Public transport more efficient.
- More access to social facilities.
- The need for careful design and planning.
- Protection of valuable conservation and agricultural land.

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**
- The need for proper growth management to contain sprawl and to densify urban areas.
- The implication of this supports the protection of valuable agricultural land and the containment of growth.
- Take note of urban edge policies and the need for densification and better utilisation of scarce land.
- No direct spatial reference to Potential Development Typologies zones and emphasises the urban edge as a strategy to contain development and to protect agricultural land.
- Look at alignment of urban edge with Potential Development Typologies Zone boundaries.

---

**Table 81: EMM Densification Strategy**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**
- The EMM Densification Strategy aims to provide guidelines for future densification in the region in terms of strategic initiatives.
- Focus on densification; sprawl costs, compaction, mixed use, environmental management, resource protection, social justice, developmental principle, balanced growth and sustainability.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**
- Principles of social justice, equity and sustainable development.

**Proposals**
- No real proposals affecting Gauteng Rural study directly.
- More general proposals, which indirectly affect rural development are:
  - Saving in land cost and unit cost;
  - Efficient provision and maintenance of infrastructure;
  - More efficient public transport;
  - More access to social facilities;
  - The need for careful design and planning;
  - Protection of valuable conservation and agricultural land;
  - Balanced growth;
  - Integrated land development;
  - Protection of low density areas;
  - Correcting the spatial imbalances of the past;
  - Scarce land to be protected;
  - Urban development boundaries to be respected;
  - Support for Transit Orientated Development; and
  - Land development should result in security of tenure, provide for the widest possible range of tenure alternatives, including individual and communal tenure, and in cases where land development takes the form of upgrading an existing settlement, it should not deprive beneficial occupiers of homes or land or where it is necessary for land or homes occupied by them to be utilized for other purposes, their interests in such land or homes should be reasonably accommodated in some other manner (p. 13).
SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- No real significant relevance, but rather to respect broader principles.
- Strategy does not address densification in rural areas, but emphasises the need for land protection (p. 13) and balanced growth and densification.
- Look at alignment of urban edge with Potential Development Typologies Zone boundaries.

Table 82: EMM Development Guide

YEAR AND STATUS

- EMM Development Guide (October 2010).

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

- The EMM Development Guide aims to provide guidelines for future development of the region and contains specific strategies and goals and is merely a compilation of existing EMM frameworks and policies.
- Document focus on densification; sprawl costs; compaction, mixed use; environmental and resource protection; social justice, developmental principle, balanced growth, sustainability, economic growth, transit orientated development and the development of all sectors.
- Strong focus to “implement a statutory Urban Development boundary”: The EMM has adopted the principle to contain urban sprawl and to protect the agricultural areas surrounding the urban complex (p. 3).

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principles/Policy

- Support principles of spatial justice, equity and sustainability

Proposals

- Strong focus on rural/agricultural development in the north east.
- It is proposed that low intensity land uses such as agricultural holdings, rural residential areas, low intensity service industries as well as urban agricultural be promoted in the fringe area – also to support the urban edge (p. 15).
- Document notes the four major concentrations of historically disadvantaged communities – on the outskirts of the main urban area – furthest remove from job opportunities. These are: Tembisa, Katorium, Kwatsaduza and the Daveyton/Etwatwa complex. This represents 65% of the population.
- See Informal settlements that developed in the mining belt.
- Gap still large between disadvantaged communities on the periphery and the previously white areas close to the urban cores.
- Important (p. 15): Area around the urban edge to be earmarked for a range of peripheral uses such as agricultural holdings, rural residential uses, low intensity service industries as well as urban agriculture.
- Areas outside the urban edge earmarked for extensive agriculture.
- Strong focus on the urban development boundary to contain growth.
- Bapsfontein area earmarked for extensive agriculture (p. 21).
- Proposals to better link the urban and rural and integrate rural disadvantaged communities into urban economy.
- Agricultural holdings in the Norton’s Small Farms are to be developed for infill development.
- Klippoortjie Lots 26 earmarked for intensive agriculture activity with residential infill.
- Holdings in the Mapleton 21 area earmarked for commercial and light industrial or infill development.
- Strong focus on ICT Infrastructure in all parts of region.
- Focus on small-scale mining.
- Intensive agriculture will be promoted, including organic food production, aquaculture and the beneficiation of agricultural products.
- Job creation and skills development.
- Tourism promotion.
- Focus on disaster management in the region.
- Urban development boundaries to be respected.
• Support for Transit Orientated Development.

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Support for Transit Orientated Development</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- Strategy emphasises the need for land protection and balanced growth and densification.
- Take note of urban edge policies and the need for densification and better utilisation of scarce land.
- See specific proposals in terms of development in rural areas and agricultural holdings (above).
- It is proposed that low intensity land uses such as agricultural holdings, rural residential areas, low intensity service industries, as well as urban agricultural be promoted in the fringe areas of the metro – also to support the urban edge (p. 15), see northern fringes of Zone 5, western fringes of Zone 4 and southern fringes of Zone 3 of the Draft LSM zones.
- Look at alignment of urban edge and “statutory Urban Development boundaries” (p. 3) with Potential Development Typologies Zone boundaries.

---

**Table 83: Rezoning On Farm Land Policy**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- Approved by Mayoral Committee.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The Rezoning on Farm Land Policy aims to provide guidelines and uniform procedure for future applications for the rezoning and development of farm.
- It further aims to speed up and streamline rezoning on farm land.
- Policy provides a clear procedure to facilitate applications for rezoning on farm land and makes it possible to rezone farm land for single uses, which is very good for small farmers and small scale agri-industries.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- Supports the facilitation of development on farm land.

**Proposals**

- Policy provides a clear procedure to facilitate applications for rezoning on farm land and makes it possible to rezone farm land for single uses, which is very good for small farmers and small scale agri-industries.

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Support for Transit Orientated Development</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- No real relevance/action.

---

**Table 84: EMM Environmental Policy 2006**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- 2006.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The EMM Environmental Policy 2006 aims to spearhead sustainable development, improve the governance function, create environmental awareness, and ensure the development of safe and healthy environments, and direct sustainability and responsible decision-making (p. 4).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- Support principles of sustainable development, environmental protection and management.

**Proposals**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Support for Transit Orientated Development</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- No real relevance/action.
• No specific proposals, but rather general proposals and guiding principles such as (p. 8-9):
  o Support of national environmental policies;
  o Integrated planning and development;
  o Sustainable use of agricultural land and non-renewable resources;
  o Protection and conservation of biodiversity and natural resources, cultural and heritage resources;
  o Protection of the Blesbokspruit;
  o Manage water resources;
  o Effective open space system;
  o Environmental education and awareness and capacity building;
  o Promote urban greening and urban agriculture;
  o Clean, healthy and safe environments;
  o Effective waste management;
  o Roads and storm water management;
  o Reduction and prevention of pollution;
  o Air quality management;
  o Noise control;
  o Water quality management; and
  o Environmental governance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

• Strategy does not address rural areas in detail, but provides for guiding principles to be respected in all areas, and specifically for the effective development and conservation of green land and agriculture.
• See environmental and conservation areas, e.g. the Blesbokspruit in the Draft LSM Zones 3, 4, 5 and 7.

---

**Table 85: EMM State Of Environment Report 2004**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

• 2004.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

• The EMM State of Environment Report (2004) aims to measure changes in the condition of the environment: What causes environmental change; what is the current condition; how does this condition affect the environment and what is society doing about this (p. 5)?
• The document uses indicators to measure aspects such as: human environment, cultural heritage, land and soils, water resources. Biodiversity and conservation, waste management and environmental management.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

Support general principles of sustainable development, environmental protection and management

**Proposals**

• Although the document does not make specific proposals it highlights the following relevant priorities:
  o Raise public awareness;
  o Develop PPPs;
  o Develop heritage tourism;
  o Monitor agriculture, and land change and land degradation, veld condition and soil erosion;
  o Recognise the GAPA proposals – 13% of EMM high agri - production, and 12% regarded as moderate. GAPA mapped 41% of the EMM region as being important for protection of agriculture – 22% of this is of high importance (p. 23);
  o Focus on rehabilitation of degraded land specifically in agri zones;
  o Strong emphasis on environmental law enforcement;
  o Importance of water resource management and protection of dams and rivers;
  o Protection of conservation areas;
  o Alien plant management;
  o Improve understanding of ecosystems in agriculture areas;
o Information sharing;
o Improve environmental legislation and policies;
o Civic awareness;
o Support of national environmental policies;
o Integrated planning and development;
o Sustainable use of agricultural land and non-renewable resources;
o Protection and conservation of biodiversity and natural resources, cultural and heritage resources;
o Management of water resources;
o Environmental education and awareness and capacity building;
o Reduction and prevention of pollution;
o Air quality management;
o Noise control;
o Water quality management; and
o Environmental governance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- Strategy does not address rural areas in detail, but provides guiding principles to be respected in all areas and specifically the effective development and conservation of green land and agriculture.
- See environmental and conservation areas, e.g. the Blesbokspruit in the Draft LSM Zones 3, 4, 5 and 7.
- Note the need to rehabilitate degraded agricultural areas in study area, see Zones 3, 4, 5, and 7 and the need to better manage and monitor land and development changes, and the emphasis on environmental law enforcement.
- See also detail proposals in above column for future implementation stages.

**Table 86: EMM Tourism Strategic Framework 2003**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>2003.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The EMM Tourism Strategic Framework 2003 aims to recommend ways by which the tourism function can be implemented in the EMM.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

- **Principles/Policy**
  - The policy supports tourism in broad terms.

- **Proposals**
  - No specific spatial proposals are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- Strategy does not address rural areas in detail.
- Important to note the relationship between tourism and agriculture and environment conservation, as well as the potential of agri-related tourism and agri-conferencing and ways to market such tourism.

**Table 87: EMM IDP 2011/12-2013/14 IDP AND IDP BUDGET SDIP 2011 – 2014**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>2011/12-2013/14 IDP.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:**

- The EMM IDP aims to guide all planning and development in all sectors of the municipality and the
**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- Is in line with the MSA 2000, see also IDP and national outcomes of the Cabinet Lekgotla held on 20-22 January 2010 indicating the government priorities and the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).
- Focuses on principles such as: basic education, safety and health, employment for all, skills development and capable workforce, efficient infrastructure, vibrant, equitable and sustainable communities with food security for all, sustainable human settlements, accountable government, protection of environmental assets and natural resources, creating a better and safer South Africa, and a development oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

**Proposals**

- The following priority service delivery areas have been identified by the community (p. 92): Roads and storm water, housing, street lights, park development, sport and recreation, construction of new clinics and extension of clinics, construction of libraries, construction of MPC & skills development centres, traffic calming and sanitation, water and sewer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- IDP does not address rural areas in detail and this should be expanded.
- IDP focuses strongly on municipal/institutional and corporate issues in the metro.
- Focus of IDP too much on infrastructure projects in wards – e.g. road surfacing, etc.
- Very few projects in rural areas and these projects are also very detailed and infrastructure in nature.
- Emphasise the need for a rural development strategy for province and for EMM with dedicated focus.
- Does not graphically show interventions and projects – gap in the system. Should relate more with SDFs.
- Budget based on IDP, therefore budget does not reflect strong or any focus on rural development.
- Primarily, maintenance and service delivery and the functioning of the authorities – this incidentally also indicates a lack of developmental state attitude and governance.
- Budget principles (p. 111) also silent on rural development.
- Reconciliation of budget with IDP strategic objectives also does not prioritise rural projects except of some system and network upgrading in certain areas, e.g. Daveyton.
- Also not possible to locate the extent and impact of projects spatially. This is a flaw in both the IDP and the SDF documents.

**Table 88: EMM Environmental Management Framework, 2007**

**YEAR AND STATUS**


**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The EMM Environmental Management Framework, 2007 aims to: provide a complete strategic environmental plan for the whole region;
- Based on a compilation of other documents and also informed by National legislation, Provincial policies (GDACE) and region’s SDFs.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- Sustainable development, environmental protection and management, quality of life – support national principles and international principles such as International Union for the Conservation of Nature.

**Proposals**

- See map of High Potential Agricultural Land (Map 7) (p. 14) – mostly in the North Eastern part of region (Bapsfontein);
- See map indicating the Blesbokspruit RAMSAR site in the east (map 9) (p. 19).
- **Agricultural constraint zone:** The agricultural constraint zone is defined by the agricultural hub and
important agricultural sites as depicted on Map 7 (p. 14). Grazing of animals and agricultural activities (excluding agro-industrial activities, abattoirs and feedlots) may be allowed without further assessment. Some land uses can be considered after basic assessment and may include residences and schools for farm workers, guest houses, engineering and service infrastructure, as well as retail and commercial activities for the farming community. Scoping and environmental impact assessments should be undertaken for developments such as filling stations, agricultural processing and packaging, abattoirs and feedlots, as well as for subdivision of land for rural residential use. Land uses that should not be considered include urban development, industrial activities, chemical storage facilities and any activities that produce effluent and can pollute water.

- **Ecological constraint zone:** Ecological constraint zone consists of natural vegetation areas as depicted on Map 8. It however does not include any of the elements in the hydrological constraint zone as all the parameters for the ecological constraint zone is also present in the hydrological constraint zone. Conservation land use or activities aimed at conservation can be allowed without further assessment. Certain conservation-related infrastructure, essential engineering services such as road, rail, pipeline and cable crossings, bridges, outfall sewers and storm water systems, can only be considered after environmental impact assessment. Similarly, urban open space containing recreational facilities and developments that cover wide areas and impact on sensitive areas, should be subject to environmental impact assessments.

- The document further presents a strong focus on:
  - Sustainable use of agricultural land and non-renewable resources;
  - Protection and conservation of biodiversity and natural resources, cultural and heritage resources;
  - Protection of the Blesbokspruit;
  - Management of water resources;
  - Effective open space system;
  - Clean, healthy and safe environments;
  - Effective waste management;
  - Reduction and prevention of pollution;
  - Air quality management;
  - Noise control; and
  - Water quality management.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>xxxxx</td>
<td>xxxxx</td>
<td>xxxxx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>xxxxx</td>
<td>xxxxx</td>
<td>xxxxx</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- See map of High potential Agricultural land (map 7) (p. 14) – mostly in the North Eastern part of region (Bapsfontein), which corresponds with the Large-Scale Agricultural sub zone in zone 3.
- See map indicating the Blesbokspruit RAMSAR site in the east (map 9) (p. 19), to the north east of Nigel, Zone 4.
- See environmental and conservation areas, e.g. the Blesbokspruit in the Draft LSM Zones 3, 4, 5 and 7.

Table 89: EMM Energy State Of Environment Report, 2006

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- 2006.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:**

- The EMM Energy State of Environment Report, 2006, aims to provide a status report on the use of energy in EMM and is closely related to the Air Quality Management Plan.
- Based on sectoral needs as contained in the IDP (p. 4).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principles/Policy**

- Supports the Draft LSM in principle.

**Proposals**

- Emphasis on wood fuel and biomass energy, solar power, waste to energy programme and biogas energy (p. 77).
• Biogas energy. It is proposed that the EMM explores biogas fabrication from waste. There are no effective existing biogas initiatives (except the Weltevreden pilot methane purification plant) that were reported at the EMM during the course of this study. However, there is an on-going survey investigating the viability for biogas production from agricultural sector within the area. Few biogas initiatives exist in South Africa, especially in the rural areas (p. 77).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

• Investigate means to generate energy, such as biogas, in rural areas (see p. 77-78).

---

Table 90: EMM Air Quality Report 2005

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2005.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

• The EMM Air Quality Report 2005 aims to provide a status report on the air quality in the region and the management of air quality.
• The report focuses primarily on built-up areas.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principles/Policy**

• Supports the principles of the project.

**Proposals**

• Makes no proposals directly relevant to the Draft LSM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

• Air quality in rural areas also needs to be addressed.

---

Table 91: Strategic Integrated Water Resource Management Plan (SIWRMP) 2006

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2006.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

• The SIWRMP aims to provide a status report on the water resources and the management of such resources in the region.
• The purpose of SIWRMP is to strike a right balance between development and service delivery for maintenance of human health and well-being and the maintenance of environmental integrity in terms of storm water management, waste management, pollution control etc.
• Based on National policies and legislation (see p. 11-18), and the National Water Resource Strategy, 2004.
• Strong focus on environmental management, conservation and protection of resources.
• Emphasises the need for proper planning and management.
• Importance of: protection and management of water resources in rural areas; flooding, disasters and risk management, water quality, managing the extraction of water, etc.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principles/Policy**

• The plan supports the principles of the project.

**Proposals**

• Plan very technical and not really focusing in detail on rural areas and agriculture. However principles are applicable to rural areas and in some cases specifically applicable, such as in the case of water
availability and quality, which is the lifeline to rural dwellers and farmers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- Plan very technical and not really focusing in detail on rural areas and agriculture. However principles are applicable to rural areas and in some cases specifically applicable, such as in the case of water availability and quality, which is the lifeline to rural dwellers and farmers.
- Importance of protection and management of water resources in rural areas; flooding, disasters and risk management, water quality, managing the extraction of water, etc.
- See specifically, the protection of the Blesbokspruit in Zone 3, as well as the other water bodies and catchment areas in the other zones.
- Further strategies need to link rural and agricultural development strategies with environmental conservation and specifically the conservation and effective management of water resources, with specific reference to: protection and management of water resources in rural areas; flooding, disasters and risk management, water quality, managing the extraction of water, etc.

**Table 92: EMM Metropolitan Spatial Development Framework 2011**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>2011.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:**

- The purpose of the Spatial Development Framework (MSDF) is to indicate to members of the public and others with an interest in the city, the desired long term proposals which will affect the Spatial form for the entire Ekurhuleni area. It indicates issues which have been formed and considered and provides everyone with the opportunity to participate in the plan making process (p. 11).
- The SDF (p. 11-13) indicates issues which have been formed and considered and provides everyone with the opportunity to participate in the plan making process and includes:
  - The basis for controlling development;
  - It shows different areas of land uses and sets policies which development proposals will have to conform to;
  - Spatial reconfiguration (of the current exclusive city form);
  - A Development Framework is also intended to provide a basis for co-ordinating public and private development, land management and expenditure;
  - Indicate areas that need to be protected in terms of Biodiversity principals as well as urban Edge limitations;
  - Guide public infrastructure investments (all at levels of government);
  - It also serves as a tool for state intervention in instances of market failure and provision of public goods; and
  - To create spaces for inclusivity in diversity.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principles/Policy**

- The SDF supports the principles of the project.

**Proposals**

- **Agriculture:** There are three main concentrations of agricultural holdings in the area. These are the area to the north of Benoni, the Witpoort/ Withok Estates to the west of Kwa-Thema (north of zone 5), Bapsfontein area (zone 3) forms the main current agricultural areas in Ekurhuleni. A number of agricultural businesses have been established in this area. Agriculture is also active in the Nigel area, as well as the areas between Kwatsaduza and Katorus (west of zone 3). In evaluating the Ekurhuleni agricultural sector, the Ekurhuleni Agricultural Development Policy, Strategy and Process (Item LED 12-2002)[MC] - MC 12-08- 2002) was evaluated. The document however did not provide any input of spatial significance (p. 32).
- **Agricultural Potential:** The Gauteng policy on the protection of high potential agricultural land (2006) defines high potential agricultural land as *“Having the soil and terrain quality, growing season and available moisture supply needed to produce sustained high yields of crops economically when treated*
and managed according to best possible farming practices”. Applying this definition, a land capability mapping study was completed during 2006 for Gauteng Province with the objective to identify and protect areas of high agricultural potential. The result of this study was subsequently classified and grouped into the following 5 classes (p. 63-64):

- **Agricultural hubs**: High potential agricultural land that resides outside the urban edge. Seven hubs have been identified in the Gauteng Province;
- **Important agricultural sites**: All land identified as high agricultural potential;
- **Incorporated within the urban edge**: All land identified and classified as high potential agricultural land but incorporated completely within the boundaries of the urban edge will not be regarded as viable land for future agricultural development;
- **Overlapping the urban edge**: High potential agricultural land that is located in close proximity and/or overlapping the urban edge boundary is regarded as agricultural land that could be utilized for agricultural production purposes;
- **Protected area**: High potential agricultural land within protected areas will not be used for agricultural purposes; and
- **Rural Residential Areas**: Low density residential development, mostly associated with agricultural use, or other forms of low density residential development as allowed in terms of the Gauteng Urban Edge Policy.

- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality has adopted the principle of an Urban Edge to contain urban sprawl and to protect the agricultural areas surrounding the urban complex in the metro. This will be in line with the existing Gauteng Urban Edge Policy as adopted by Ekurhuleni. Essentially the Urban Edge limits the type and extent of uses to be allowed outside the urban area and it will require extensive motivations for any exceptions in this regard (p. 20).

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- SDF only indicate agriculture areas and no real specific **spatial detail** of agri - related developments and rural development.
- The SDF broadly addresses rural development in the Draft LSM Zones 3, 4, 5 and 7.
- The areas indicated for high value agricultural land in the document, such as: the area to the north of Benoni (south of Zone 3), the Witpoort/Withok Estates to the west of Kwa-Thema (north of Zone 5), Bapsfontein area (Zone 3), the Nigel area, as well as the areas between Kwatsaduza and Katorus (west of Zone 3), strongly conforms with the proposals in the Potential Development Typology Zones.
- The SDF also supports the mixed use type of agri development on the fringes of the metro area, and states that “**High potential agricultural land that is located in close proximity and / or overlapping the urban edge boundary is regarded as agricultural land that could be utilized for agricultural production purposes**” (p. 63-64).
- The SDF supports low density residential development, mostly associated with agricultural use, or other forms of low density residential development in rural areas (p. 63-64).
- The SDF also strongly emphasises the need to enforce an urban edge to protect agricultural land (see also alignment of urban edge with Potential Development Typology Zone boundaries).

**SEDIBENG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY**

**Table 93: Sedibeng DM Annual Report 2010-2011**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Published in 2011.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| • In accordance with the Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 and the Municipal Systems Act, 2000, the SDM has to prepare an Annual Report, providing an annual overview of its activities in relation to income generation, spending, and the achievement of its developmental objectives (p. 4).
| • The Mayor notes that the SDM has made significant progress in meeting its strategic objectives, consistent with its vision and mission (p. 2). |
The Mayor also makes reference to the pursuit of metro status for the DM (p. 2)

The MM indicates that the financial position of the DM remains sound, that inconsistent subsidies around the EMS function has been cause for concern, and that NDPG projects have materialised and resulted in positive tangible results on the ground (Page 3).

The document recognises that the DM has “pockets of land that is suitable for Agricultural purposes and shows marks of a semi-urban area”. It is also stated that, “in the last 15 years, there was a significant shift from the combination of peri-urban or semi-urban to an urban area with the biggest growth in the building and settlement of people in low cost housing (RDP house)” (Page 9).

Midvaal is identified as the LM in the DM with the lowest urbanisation rate (48.2%), followed by Lesedi LM at 76% (2008-figures) (p. 9).

The sector-contributions to the DM GVA show that Agriculture has risen from 1.6% in 2001 to 2% in 2010 (p. 11).

The report indicates that unemployment has risen from around 20% in 1996 to around 35% in 2009 (p. 14).

The report indicates that the percentage of people living in poverty has risen from 25% in 1996 to 35% in 2009 (p. 21).

The report indicates that the Gini-Coefficient has risen from nearly 0.58 in 1996 to 0.66 in 2009 (p. 24).

The report notes that the LED Manager attended a “Hydroponics Vegetable Production Course” (p. 31).

The report notes that the DM has been focusing on the tourism and heritage sector as an economic sector (p. 37-38).

The IDP has one of its strategies the promotion and development of the agriculture sector and the pursuit of food security. This was also pursued by the DM and supported by the DRDLR which launched two projects in Devon and Bantu Bonke to boost agricultural development (p. 38).

A “Rural Tourism and Intelligence sharing workshop” and a “Rural Tourism Workshop” were held in June and April 2011 respectively (p. 38).

The Gauteng Department of Agriculture and Rural Development (GDARD) established projects for “food security and farm settlement” in the DM (p. 38).

Lesedi LM has agricultural projects that are supported financially by the SDM. A “District Farmers Forum” was held on the 14th of April 2011 (p. 39).

Rural Safety Forums and Strategies were developed for the De Barrage and Heidelberg areas (p. 45).

A Safety Forum was, in addition to the DM’s urban areas, also established in the rural area of De Deur (p. 45).

Rural Safety strategies were developed in the rural areas targeted (p. 45).

Reference is made to Joint Municipal Managers Forum meetings and Joint Mayoral Committees Forum meetings, in the area of IGR (p. 56).

The expenditure on “employee-related costs” decreased from 56% of the budget in 2008 to 49% of the budget in 2011 (p. 69).

It is noted that in the case of Priority 1 incidents, in 85.14% of cases in rural areas in the DM, persons were reached within 40 minutes (p. 48).

Rural youth were targeted in the war on poverty programme in Bantu Bonke and Evaton West (p. 49). Rural youth were also involved in an ABSA Financial Management Training programme (p. 50).

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

- The Annual Report indicates and suggests that the DM does also focus on the rural areas within its administrative area.
- It is also clear that the DM seeks to develop the agricultural and economic capacity of emerging farmers in its area of jurisdiction.
- Food security seems to be an issue of focus in the support of agriculture in the DM.

Proposals

- The areas of focus as noted in the report correspond with Zones 4, 5 and 6, as identified in the Draft LSM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The DM is supportive of rural development and support of the agricultural sector. It is, however, clearly faced with huge developmental challenges in its urban areas that are absorbing a lot of its focus,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The report suggests that the DM collaborates with both the provincial and national spheres of government and the private sector in pursuit of its developmental objectives, including its rural and agricultural development objectives.

Table 94: Sedibeng DM IDP 2012/13-2016/17, SDF 2009 And Integrated Transport Plan, 2010, And The SDM Human Settlement Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Adopted by Council in 2012 for the next five-year period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• SDF, 2009.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• ITP, 31 August 2010.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• SDM Sustainable Human Settlement Plan, 2010.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The Plan makes reference to the Second Generation Sedibeng GDS (p. i).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The DM wants to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Become the “Vaal Metropolitan River City” by 2016 (p. ii).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Move the DM from an edge to a frontier region (p. ii).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Work with big business – interface being through IDP and GDS (p. iii).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Stated that budget and service delivery promises are conservative due to state of economy and accompanying uncertainties (p. iii).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Expresses strong wish for collaboration and participation from the side of communities (p. iv).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Says IGR is much better in DM now than it used to be (p. v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Small capital budget – R50 million (p. 6).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Key driver seems wish to become a metro. (p. 6-7).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• DM has not been able to review its SDF since 2009, wants to ask DBSA to assist. (p. 8).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Also met with DLDR to assist with SDF process, GIS and LUMS (p. 8).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Communities want cooperatives supported (p. 11).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Agriculture contributes a very small amount to the DM GVA (p. 43). Not clear from data (odd) what the size of the tourism GVA is (p. 44 and 45).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Vaal River and Suikerbosrand key tourism destinations in the province (p. 45).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Noted that Agriculture saw negative growth between 2006 and 2010 (p. 46).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Huge decrease in persons employed in Agriculture, forestry and fishing from 4 319 in 2006 to 2 593 (minus 40%) in 2010 (p. 48). 5.7% of the workforce employed in this sector (p. 48).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Very high unemployment rates in the DM. Some of the highest in Gauteng (p. 49).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• SDM has highest poverty levels (% persons in poverty) in GP (p. 56).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Housing outside the urban edge seen as “rural housing” and dealt with by national and provincial government (p. 53).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• More rural settlements in the DM are in Midvaal. Also has 12 informal settlements in deep rural agricultural areas (p. 53).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pollution a major problem (p. 54).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Economic stagnation in region a major concern and challenge (p. 74-5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The ITP sees strong population growth in SDM till 2025 (incremental percentage growth of 8.9% per annum) (p. 36).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principles/Policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Regards Sedibeng as largely rural with extensive potential for rural development. Refers to national government launching a “Maize Triangle Scheme” in the region with the primary aim of providing support and building the capacity of emerging farmers and assisting them to be self-sufficient and to enable them to contribute to ensuring food security for the country. (p. iii).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Seen as part of the initiative to ensure that economic activities are created in rural areas to reduce rural to urban migration. The DM will be facilitating the training of emerging farmers and also be facilitating their access to markets. (p. iii).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The IDP is firmly committed to tourism, especially “rural tourism”. (p. 14). A good example is the Vaal Meander and the Wine Route of Sedibeng. (p. 14). Conservation and environmental management key focus areas. (p. 17). Heritage tourism also big (p. 20).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• Promoting and developing the agriculture sector is a key priority. (p. 15).
• There is a Sedibeng Farmers Forum. (p. 15).
• Emphasis in strategic spatial planning is on building on urban and rural strengths. (p. 84).
• The area has strong corridors that the DM seeks to exploit, e.g. the N3, the R59, the R82, the N1 and the N17. (p. 94-96).
• The bulk of the budget by far is spent on operational expenses (salaries) leaving very little for anything else. (p. 277).

Proposals

• Notes that the densities in SDM in rural areas are low, towns are far apart and service delivery is expensive. Focus in service delivery in urban areas. Innovative ways for servicing in rural areas will need to be found, it is argued. (p. 74).
• Mixed land-use, lower density peri-urban and rural settlements are anticipated and supported in the following areas:
  o Heidelberg/Ratanda;
  o Devon/Impumelelo;
  o Vischuil/Edicott;
  o Thsepiso North Ext 3 and 4;
  o Sonderwater;
  o Boipatong;
  o Lakeside Ext 4;
  o Sebokeng Ext 4; and
  o Lakeside Proper.
• In these areas, land can be set aside for grazing. Lower levels of services are envisaged (p. 86).
• Recognises the importance of Agriculture in the region and the need to protect high-value agricultural land (p. 89). Also a need to consider subdivision and development very carefully (p. 89-90).
• Devon/Impumelelo is regarded as a Tertiary Development Node (p. 91).
• The land between Vereeniging and De Deur: protect rural character – protect farms and agricultural holdings (p. 93).
• The IDP proposes the retention of the land demarcated by Zone 7 for agricultural purposes and rural residential uses over the short to medium term. (p. 95). Opportunities in the agricultural sector for processing and export should also be explored. (p. 95). The R59, running to the east of it, is to be developed as a development corridor (p. 99).
• The IDP/SDF proposes the development, use and retention of the three agricultural hubs (Emfuleni, Midvaal and Lesedi Agricultural Hub) (p. 96-97). These are Zones 4 and 5 and half of Zone 6, the other half being located in Westrand.
• Key rural nodes are:
  o Devon and Endicott (Zone 4);
  o Ratanda (Zone 5); and
  o Garthdale (Zone 7) (p. 98).
• Tourism development a key strategy, notably using the Vaal River (p. 109).
• Agriculture, agrarian reform and farming boosted as strategy – spatial references not provided in IDP strategies section (p. 111).
• The strategy seeks to retain businesses, strengthen value chains, boost cooperatives and develop new business opportunities in the rural, agricultural areas (p. 112).
• Protection of ecosystem (p. 114-116).
• Want to strengthen regional tourism organisation, boost agro-processing, utilise fresh produce market better (p. 128 and 134).
• Programs to train farmers and cooperatives and assist them with getting access to markets (p. 134).
• Heritage and museums better utilised (p. 155).
• Township tourism development strategy (p. 200).
• Training and capacity building for farmers, especially new farmers (p. 200)

ITP:

• Not much mention of rural or agriculture in the ITP.
• The ITP refers to a historic tourism, heritage precinct, and Waterfront project development in Sharpeville (Sharpeville Dam), in Zone 5 (p. 71) and Waterfront developments on the Vaal River in Zone 5 (p. 80-83).
• Reference is made to a Vaal logistical hub in the SDM area bordering the southern part of the CoJ (p. 84-94 and p. 116).
• The ITP refers to the Devon/Impumelelo hub in Zone 4 as a key rural settlement node (p. 110).
• A Strategic Development Area (SDA) is referred to for the Heidelberg area (ITP: p. 111). This does not seem to be rural or agricultural in nature.
• Large-scale farming in the Lesedi LM is recognised and supported (ITP: p. 112).
• Reference is made to Area Based Planning (ABP) areas that are being developed in the SDM (ITP: p. 112).
• Reference is made to a number of private airstrips/fields in the area (ITP: p. 147). These may hold some value for transport of products.
• The Vaal River has 54km that is navigable (ITP: p. 175). This stretch could be more intensively used for tourism and transport.

**SDM Sustainable Human Settlement Plan:**
• Provision is made in the SDM Sustainable Human Settlement Plan for rural housing (p. 12). No specific place mentioned.
• The SHSP refers to the Farm Residents Housing Assistance Programme and provides an overview of what it does, but not what it means in terms of delivery in the SDM (p. 26-27).
• “Rural settlements” are mentioned in the SHSP (p. 33).
• Rural settlement proposed on the RS49 to the south of Ratanda (SHSP: p. 36).
• The growth of informal areas in the SDM could become a problem for rural and agricultural development (SHSP: p. 43-46).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- Strong support for the policies and proposals in the Draft GRDLRP LSM.
- Not clear on how the cash-strapped DM will be able to do anything about its concerns, objectives and proposals.
- Seems that, while rural and agriculture is often mentioned, there is a very strong wish to be seen as a metro. How this gels with the rural nature of the DM is not clarified.

**Table 95: Growth And Development Strategy 2, 2012**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- It is a draft document, published in 2012.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The GDS is described as building on, and not replacing the earlier GDS 1 (p. 2/03).
- The GDS is described as having a "long term vision" and one in which the district is not “afraid to dream". (Foreword).
- Reference is made to Devon in the Foreword by the Executive Mayor, implying a recognition of the presence of rural places in the DM as well.
- Reference is made in the Foreword to the Vaal Metropolitan River City and its “urban centre”.
- The document has a 2030 vision. It is presented as a “strategy to cope with uncertainty”. (Contents page 1).
- The SDF is seen as very important for the GDS. (Contents page, p. 2 and p. 7/01).
- The 2030-vision refers to “the attraction of new talented people” to the DM (p. 1/01).
- References in the Vision are only to a “river city” (p. 1/01).
- The GDS is seen as providing an opportunity for the DM to have a long-term plan for growth and development that “aligns with, and translates national and provincial objectives into practical interventions" (p. 2/01). It is seen as a way of localising national and provincial strategies (p. 2/01). It is also seen as a way of preventing long-term growth trajectories by being overturned after every election, due to broad-based stakeholder buy-in (p. 2/02).
- The GDS focuses on catalytic “flagship” projects to achieve a few high-impact outcomes for the region (p. 2/02 and 3/04).
- The GDS refers to and connects the strategy to the national outcomes, the Local Government Turnaround Strategy, the NDP and the national and provincial policy imperatives (p. 3/03-3/04).
- The GDS identifies a “rural development strategy” as a gap in GDS 1 (p. 3/04). The conclusion does not mention ‘rural’ as an area in which improvements have been made in GDS 2 (p. 3/04).
Agricultural cooperatives is identified as a “rural development” program (p. 9/01).

The implementation of a rural development programme is listed as a flagship project (p. 9/01).

Collaboration in getting the projects implemented is recognised (p. 7/06).

It is noted that the flagship projects have been high priority for the DM (p. 7/03).

Reference is made to the GDS. (Page 4/02).

The GDS argues that SA’s “sluggish informal economy” must be rekindled (p. 4/05).

It is noted that housing in general in the DM has been built more housing than most other DMs, but that this was done without a comprehensive housing plan, and that “rural housing” has been neglected relative to urban housing (p. 4/08).

It is shown that the DM’s economy was less resilient to changes in the global economy in the recession of 2007 than the national economy (p. 4/10).

The size of the GVA of the Agricultural sector fell between 2006 and 2011. Its relative size in the DM economy has remained the same. It is very small though – the smallest sector in the DM (p. 4/11 and 4/17).

Only 1.3% of the DM’s workforce is employed in Agriculture – the second lowest percentage in the DM (p. 4/14).

Tourism is regarded as an important sector in the DM (p. 4/16).

Reference is made to the Maize Triangle Scheme (a scheme to provide support to farmers, build their capacity, make them self-sufficient and enhance food security) that was launched in 2010, and that is seen as having resulted in an upward trend in the Agricultural GVA (p. 4/17).

Over-concentration on the Manufacturing sector is seen a problem for the resilience of the local economy (p. 4/18).

The branding and marketing strategy referred to on Page 4/19 is very urban-focused (no reference to rural).

It is mentioned that the DM has failed to implement very few of the flagship projects identified in the 2006 GDS (notably corridor projects) (p. 4/20).

Under “The environment” it is mentioned that the area has huge tourism potential, suffers from pollution and an ageing infrastructure, which all add to sewerage pollution, and pockets of high-value agricultural land, and that 33% of the land mass of the DM is devoted to agriculture. Challenges to utilising this potential properly are noted, such as skewed ownership, soil degradation, ad hoc agricultural initiatives, a lack of adequate technical support, a lack of awareness and programmes to alert rural communities of the opportunities agriculture holds (p. 4/22).

The GDS refers to the creation of a single metro body as a key way of achieving the growth and development objectives – to be called the “Greater Vaal Metropolitan River City” (p. 5/01 – 5/02).

It is noted that there is a high level of dependency amongst a significant proportion of the DM’s population living in the rural and peri-urban areas and that this will continue over at least the medium term (10 years) (p. 7/01).

It is stated that the focus of strategic investment in the DM will be in the urban cores, but that there will also be investment in the fringe urban and peri-urban areas where there are opportunities (p. 7/02).

The GDS refers to a “proposed SDF” in which provision will be made for protection of environmental areas and assets and support provided for agricultural development, including the provision of linkages, storage facilities and transportation (p. 7/02).

Reference is made to “Tertiary Development Nodes, that are proposed to function as local service centres to support the agricultural sector”, including:

- Devon/Impumelelo, which is described as the second largest node in the Lesedi LM;
- Vischkuil/Endicott;
- the Nampak/Everite area;
- Sebokeng; and
- Evaton (p. 7/02).

Numerous corridors are proposed, i.e. (1) the R59; (2) the N17; and (3) the N3 (p. 7/03).

Environmentally sensitive areas are identified, including the rivers, dams and nature reserves (p. 7/03).

It is noted that the flagship projects will be implemented through the IDP. The need for integration and collaboration in getting the projects implemented is recognised (p. 7/06).

The “implementation of a rural development programme” is listed as a flagship project (p. 9/01).

- This project is the Sedibeng Maize Triangle Project. It is focused on providing infrastructural as well as logistical support to small and emerging farmers and cooperatives in agriculture (p. 9/04).

“Agricultural cooperatives” is identified as a “rural development pilot project” in Midvaal in the Vaal Marine/Bantu Bonke areas.

- The project inter alia seeks to “change the mindset that thinks that rural development is all about agricultural development only” and “to reduce the outflow of the rural poor into urban areas” (p. 9/05).

GAUTENG RURAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN
The “Sharpeville Heritage Precinct Legacy Project” is a flagship project with a tourism focus (p. 9/08).

The GDS was prepared with significant stakeholder participation and more is envisaged – it is described as a a “twenty year conversation” (p. 10/01).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principles/Policy**

- The GDS by and large supports the sentiments as echoed in the Draft LSM. It foes, however, not explicitly mention the kind of rural development that the Draft LSM envisages.
- While the GDS does include reference to rural areas and agricultural development, and also includes flagship projects in support of these, it is essentially an urban-focused strategy.
- A key concern in the GDS is the establishment of a metropolitan municipality, which may not necessarily be all that supportive of a focus on rural areas and rural development in the envisaged metro.

**Proposals**

- The “Spatial Concept” in the GDS:
  - Supports the large scale agriculture as identified in the Draft LSM, but includes a sizeable “urban development corridors influence zone” around the Vischkuil/Endicott-node, whereas the Draft LSM refers to it as an area for “small-scale agri-based rural development” (Zone 4);
  - Supports the large scale agriculture as identified in the Draft LSM, but includes a sizeable “urban development corridors influence zone” around the Heidelberg node, whereas the Draft LSM identifies it for “rural economic activities and related settlement”. These could be very similar in nature (Zone 5);
  - Identifies the triangle created by Vanderbijlpark, Vereeniging and Evaton as an intense urban zone, while the Draft LSM identifies it for “small-scale agri-based rural development”;
  - Supports the large scale agriculture as identified in the Draft LSM to the west of the “urban triangle”;
  - Does not identify the potential of the Vaal River for tourism, as is done throughout the document (Zones 5 and 6); and
  - Views the area covered by Zone 7 as an “urban development corridors influence zone”, and does seemingly not envisage much of a long-term rural and/or agricultural future for this zone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- While there are many areas of agreement between the Sedibeng DM GDS 2 and the Draft LSM, there are also differences, with the former seeing more urban development than the more rural development that the latter identified.
- It would be necessary to engage the SDM officials tasked with the preparation and implementation of the GDS 2 on the differences, which may not necessarily be differences. (They may be differences in definition and less so in terms of what is intended.)
- The focus on the creation of a metro in the area may not be to the advantage of the rural sections/areas of the municipality, as it could go along with a focus to show off/showcase how “urban” the area is.

**Table 96: SDM Service Delivery And Budget Implementation Plan 2011/2012**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- Adopted by the SDM Council on 31 March 2010.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The SDBIP includes a project to prepare a plan for the Waterfront area along the Vaal River. It also includes a plan for the Boipatong Youth and Memorial Building with heritage tourism in mind. Both these had to be completed by June 2012 (p. 24).
- The SDBIP includes an IDP Strategy which seeks to promote and develop the agriculture sector. The IDP deliverable in this regard is to develop a rural development strategy for Sedibeng. It is meant to have been completed by March 2012. It is to be developed by the LED Cluster and has “rural development in the region” as output in mind (p. 28).
- The SDBIP includes an IDP strategy to “promote and develop the agriculture sector”. It has as objective to identify existing farmer’s organisations in the region and to coordinate stakeholder meetings. This had to be done by September 2011. The output is the launch of the Sedibeng Farmers’ forum, and it
Proposals
Principle/Policy

SUMMARY

• The SDBIP includes a project to facilitate access to funding and support for agriculture in the DM. It seeks to host four information sessions for farmers and to link fifteen farmers and cooperatives to funding for agriculture by March 2012. It is the responsibility of the LED Cluster. It has as outcome to fund agricultural programmes with external funds and to empower local farmers and cooperatives (p. 29).

• The SDBIP includes a project to obtain information on agricultural land that is ready for agricultural use and to launch three pilot sites for agro-processing projects by June 2012. It seeks as outcome agricultural development and value-adding agro-processing. It is the responsibility of the LED Cluster (p. 29).

• The SDBIP includes a series of tourism-related projects to boost tourism in/to the district, conduct tourism research, facilitate funding for tourism entrepreneurs, develop tourism infrastructure, form partnerships with a range of government and parastatals role-players, boost township tourism, develop links between tourism attractions, especially to link township tourism to other tourism attractions, develop a township tourism strategy, provide proper tourist signage, and facilitate the development of tourism. These all had to be done by June and September 2012 (p. 33-34).

• The SDBIP includes the preparation of Rural Safety Strategies in the De Barage area and Heidelberg. It was meant to be done by June 2012, is the responsibility of Community Safety, has as output that “regular rural safety meetings are held”, and as outcome “decreased crime levels at the farms and other remote areas” (p. 45).

• The SDBIP includes an operational target on the response time of the EMS to get to incidents in rural areas of 40 minutes in 85% of cases. It is the responsibility of Community Services: EMS, and has as outcome “better emergency services for all and a decreased mortality rate” (p. 69).

• The SDBIP includes an operational objective of improving EMS in rural and outlying areas by dedicating 2 emergency vehicles to rural areas (p. 71).

• The SDBIP distinctly includes rural areas in its promotion of HIV and AIDS awareness and understanding and treatment. (No date is specified.) It specifically seeks to ensure the safety of communities along the Vaal River (as outcome) (p. 75).

• The SDBIP includes an initiative to develop a database of rural youth structures by July 2010 (p. 85).

• The SDBIP includes a number of initiatives to enhance IGR (locally and internationally) and to visit other newly created metros to learn from them (p. 4).

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

• The SDBIP shows strong support for agriculture and rural development, including and especially tourism development in the municipality.

• The SDBIP indicates that the DM does not see its role as funding all the initiatives, but also provides for the DM to seek and obtain funds from elsewhere.

• The SDBIP suggests a strong commitment to working in collaboration with other stakeholders and role-players in the agriculture and rural development sectors/areas.

Proposals

• In most cases the SDBIP does not make explicit statements regarding spatial areas of focus. It does specify the Vaal River (Zones 5 and 6) and the De Barage area and Heidelberg (Zones 5 and 6).

• The focus on township areas is in most cases adjacent to the Zones, and can hence be regarded as indirectly supporting the development of the Zones.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

• It would be important to establish what the status of the strategies, projects, programmes and plans are referred to in the SDBIP is. This is not just important from the perspective of knowing what it is, but also to see and understand what the challenges are in boosting agriculture and rural development, and how strong a partner the DM can be in financial and human capacity terms in the pursuing these objectives in the district.

• It would also be important to understand where and how the DM could be supported by other stakeholders.
LESEDI LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

Table 97: LLM Draft Annual Report 2010/11 Financial Year: Development & Planning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- One of the major achievements listed is the facilitation by the LLM of the township establishment around the Tamboekiesfontein logistics hub, which is located between the N3 and the R103 corridors and can be directly accessed from the freeway through the R550 corridor. The development of the project will cost a minimum of R3-billion and is a huge public-private venture with all three spheres of government and the IDC also involved (p. 1 and 2).
- The importance of the connection of the LED planning by the municipality to the CRDP is noted (p. 1).
- A section is devoted to the CRDP in which the LLM indicates that it is fully supportive of it, and in which the identification of the LLM as a GP-wide “Agricultural Hub” is noted. The LLM is very supportive of this proclamation (p. 5).
- The identification and launch of Devon as CRDP node in March 2011 is mentioned (p. 5).
- The municipality has, together with other governments actors (national and provincial) embarked on a range of initiatives, such as the clearing of alien vegetation, using the EPWP, establishment of SMMEs, providing support to cooperatives and establishing an eco-furniture factory in the area of Vischkuil (p. 3).
- The alien vegetation eradication project is seen as inter alia “restoring agricultural capacity and security” (p. 4).
- Reference is made to a huge number of houses (1 259 houses) that will be built in the Impumelelo node (p. 7).
- Reference is made to illegal activities and land use contraventions on the Agricultural Holdings in the LLM and the challenge the LLM faces in locating and responding to these due to limited staff numbers and the costs involved in such endeavours (p. 9).

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

- The document indicates full support for rural development, the CRDP and the utilisation of the agricultural potential of the LM.

Proposals

- The document includes a number of initiatives that the LLM has embarked on and is in the process of undertaking that support the mappings of the Draft LSM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE / CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- The document indicates full support for the Draft LSM. Progress with the implementation of the proposals and ways in which this can be enhanced can be explored further in the engagement phase.

Table 98: Lesedi Local Municipality Integrated Development Plan 2012-2016

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The IDP was still in draft form. It was to be approved on the 29th of May 2012 (p. 2 and 6).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The title page of the IDP refers to a “people-centred and performance driven municipality”.
- Reference is made to transport that was arranged (and paid for (p. 4-5)) for people from Devon/Impumelelo, Endicott/Kwazenzele and Jameson Park to enable them to participate in public meetings in the review of the IDP (p. 2). It is also stated that in the case of Jameson Park, meetings were held in the evenings to accommodate people that are working (p. 2). It is explicitly stated that the meetings in Heidelberg at Shalimar Ridge and Vischkuil/Endicott were held to “cater for people around rural areas” (p. 5).
- Reference is made to the Sedibeng GDS 2 that the LLM IDP is aligned with (p. 2).
The LLM has a project to development that jobs will be created in (1) agriculture, land reform (agri-villages) and agri-processing; (2) light industries (manufacturing); and (3) tourism, with tourism seen as boosting rural development (p. 85-86).

The LLM has a project to eradicate alien vegetation that is especially detrimental to the LLM (p. 87).
• Commonage land has been acquired (520 hectares) that the LLM want to develop to discourage backyard farming in residential areas. A partnership with AFGRI-SA has been established. A trust has been put in place to manage the project. A process is also underway by the LLM to appoint an agricultural expert to assist with the project, including the preparation of a turnaround strategy and the reaching of a MoU with commercial farmers and their organisations (p. 89).

• There is a Wetland in Ratanda Extension 2 that is being threatened by a range of factors – cattle, informal dwellings and kraals (p. 88-89).

• The LLM introduced a series of special projects to alleviate poverty, including the Ratanda Farmers’ Cooperative in Ratanda. It has five beneficiaries and two broiler houses. It is being supported by the CDACE. Water is however a problem. Water is drawn from the Blesbokspruit to address this issue (p. 90). Three further projects (Bophani Izidwaba Makhosizaki, Ingqayizivele and Thutukani are also discussed. The first has 13 beneficiaries, the second has 20 who are resident in Impumelelo, and the third is not functional and vandalised (p. 90-91).

• The fact that the LLM has been identified as one of the seven Agricultural Hubs in the GP is noted and discussed. Devon is noted as a CRDP site. The purchase of the farm Zeekoegat, Portion 2, 325 IR is mentioned as a way of procuring land and developing it for farming purposes with 64 beneficiaries in a Trust-format (p. 91).

• Agriculture is described as taking up 95% of the land in the area (p. 93).

• It is mentioned that “Lesedi is a very important resource to Gauteng in terms of food production, and this fact should be taken into consideration in the future planning of the area.” It is also noted that large farms dominate the farming sector and that there are also huge processors of agricultural produce in the LM, such as Karan beef, escort and Mancho Ranch (p. 93).

• Challenges to land reform are raised as “funding, proper planning (Area Based Plans), access to information, absence of a rural development strategy to counter urban sprawl, pricing of properties, alignment of food security and (lack of) small farm development initiatives (for) economic development” (p. 93).

• It is noted that a “relatively large proportion of the agricultural holdings (4.5% of the LM land area) are vacant” (p. 95).

• Tourism is seen as a key strategy by the LLM, but its challenges, notably capital and lack of collaboration between operators and lack of knowledge and resources, are listed (p. 95). A number of projects are identified (p. 96).

• Lack of access to educational, health and social services in rural areas and poverty and unemployment are highlighted (p. 124, 125 and 127). Job creation is proposed through a series of projects – the GP’s agricultural hub, the commonage, small-scale farming and CRDP projects (p. 127-128). Reference is also made to the “aspirations of the landless rural population” (p. 128). Reference is made to exploring bio-fuels, the need for collaboration in farming and more research/studies in the area of agriculture (p. 132). Getting information on what is available in government is seen as a strategy. The CRDP is crucial in this regard (p. 135-136).

• Tourism and leisure is seen as inter alia offering the potential of “strengthening rural regeneration, caring for the countryside and preserving physical and cultural heritage” (p. 137). The LLM is seen as the LM with the best tourism potential. A tourism strategy is noted as a necessity (p. 138).

• The connectedness of the LLM IDP strategies to the Sedibeng GDS 2, with this strategy providing the guide, is noted (p. 132).

• The establishment of a local tourism association is mentioned, and linking the association to poverty areas, is mentioned as a strategy (p. 137).

• It is noted that due to the rural nature of the LM the focus of a number of projects is on agriculture, and everything must be done provide opportunities for people to enter the market through access to land, linkages to the formal economy, spin offs, training, etc. (p. 138). Key with regards to many of the projects is the CRDP-status of Devon (p. 138).

• A range of infrastructure projects (transport and notably water services and sewer services) and youth training/skills development in rural areas is provided for (p. 148-160).

• A number of environmental projects are also provided for (p. 159-160).

• Under the main criterion “Efficiency”, the following sub-criterion is listed: “Will the implementation of the project promote the efficient functioning of the urban and rural areas?” (p. 167).

• It is noted that most projects were selected based on a need expressed by the community (p. 164).

• It is noted that the low density of settlement in the LLM makes the provision of infrastructure and other municipal services very costly and that future urban development should be concentrated in a few locations (p. 169).
The food production function of the LLM is seen as a key determinant in the future planning for the area (p. 169).

The development of multi-functional rural service nodes (e.g. Vischkuil) is supported (p. 169).

Devon/Impumelelo is described as an “urban area” (p. 170).

Land reform projects are proposed in rural areas and it is proposed that such areas must be protected from land invasions (p. 170).

Vischkuil/Endicott is described as an “emerging node” (p. 170).

The strip of land between Route R29 and the N17 is demarcated as a “Zone of Opportunity”. It is also proposed that “agricultural-based LED initiatives” should be pursued here (p. 171).

The ecologically sensitive Blesbokspruit and Suikerbosrand areas and their tributaries are to be conserved and promoted as eco-tourism centres. Grazing is to be allowed in the “Suikerbosrand hills” (p. 171).

An urban edge is proposed (p. 171).

An “open space linkage system” around the natural elements in the LLM is proposed (p. 177).

It is indicated that the local economy for “previously disadvantaged rural dwellers” is depressed, and a limited opportunity for formal job creation is foreseen (p. 178).

Skills development and SMME support are proposed, with a focus on agricultural LED projects (p. 178-179).

Lack of (mobile) clinics is a problem regarding health in general and specifically HIV and AIDS (p. 184).

The Blesbokspruit Wetlands is a RAMSAR site (p. 184).

Reference is made to the need for scoping/EIAs for the agricultural villages of Tokolohong and KwaZenzele that are being proposed in the IDP (p. 185).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- The IDP clearly indicates that the LLM is fully aware of the rural status of the bulk of the municipal area and is focused on addressing the challenges encountered in these areas with rural, and not urban, solutions.
- The LLM is also focused on tourism and on protecting its natural assets that play a key role in this regard.

**Proposals**

- The proposals in the IDP fully support the Draft LSM.
- The rural nodes, as identified in the Draft LSM, are fully supported in the IDP. The definition of the nodes in some cases as urban and others as rural may need to be explored further in terms of what is understood and envisaged in such nodes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION / PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The LLM IDP fully supports the Draft LSM in its principles and proposals.

---

**Table 99: Annual Report November 2011**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- The Report was adopted in November 2011.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- Prevention of illegal dumping in urban and rural areas is mentioned as a key performance indicator (p. 122).
- It is indicated that the extension of waste removal services to rural areas has to be explored (p. 122-123).
- The report indicates that a strategy on rural housing development has been drafted and would be tabled during the 2011/12 financial year (p. 143).
- The report indicates that water supply to the Malgere and Masmith AHs (outside the urban edge), as well as upgrades to the Vaaloeveryer water supply system, have been made (p. 127).
- Reference is made to the use of MIG funding to extend water infrastructure to AHs in the ELM (p. 129-130).
Facilitation of and support to agricultural programs was pursued. The actions included putting in place steps to empower cooperatives to take over the management of hydroponic projects. It is stated that an Agricultural plan/strategy was developed. Reference is also made to the need to motivate for an agricultural section to be established in the ELM (p. 149).

It is stated that the expansion of mobile primary health care services to identified rural points has to be explored (p. 172). Twinning with Eindhoven has resulted in the handing over of three mobile clinics to the ELM (p. 198).

The importance of tourism for the ELM economy is stated and some of the actions taken by the ELM in supporting the sector, noted (p. 146). These include (1) the implementation of a Tourism Development Strategy and (2) participation in the activities of the Emfuleni Tourism Association and the Sedibeng Regional Tourism Organisation (p. 148).

### IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

#### Principle/Policy

- The report indicates strong support for tourism, some support for agricultural development and reasonably strong support for housing provision and the the roll-out of social services to rural areas.

#### Proposals

- The report does not indicate much in the form of detailed proposals regarding development in Zones 5 or 6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- The levels of support for rural development and agriculture need to be explored in the engagement with the ELM.
- The successes with the boosting of the tourism sector need to be established in the engagement with the ELM.

---

**Table 100: ELM Draft Annual Report 2010/2011**

#### YEAR AND STATUS

- The Report was adopted in 2011.

#### DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

- It is indicated that, through the use of the MIG, water supply has been extended to agricultural holdings (p. i).
- The potential of tourism for the ELM is stated (p. 1).
- It is indicated that the ELM contributes 3.1% of the particular sector’s contribution to the GP GDP (p. 5).
- Strategic events are being marketed to boost tourism in the ELM (p. 31).
- Reference is made reductions in illegal dumping of waste in both urban and rural areas (p. 33).
- Fire prevention in rural areas was supported by the placing of fire trailers in rural areas (p. 34).
- The Department of Local Economic Development and Tourism has 17 employees and all the posts are filled. This is 0.63% of the total number of employees of the ELM (p. 46).

#### IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

#### Principle/Policy

- The support for tourism development in the ELM is borne out by delivery.
- Not much is said regarding rural areas and agricultural development.

#### Proposals

- The report does not go into detail regarding proposals that could be tied to Zones 5 and 6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- The report confirms the support for tourism.
- The extent to which agriculture and rural development is supported and pursued by the ELM needs to be explored in the engagements with the ELM.
Table 101: ELM Budget 2012 To 2013

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Policy was adopted in 2011.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

- Reference is made to infrastructure that is being built in a more rural part of the ELM (electricity and street-lights).
- A number of tourism-related activities are proposed and budgeted for.

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

- The budget does make provision for rural development and tourism support. It is, however, quite limited vis-à-vis other expenditure in the budget.

Proposals

- No specific proposals are made regarding the development of Zones 5 and 6.

SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Summary: Project Response

- The dedication of the EML, as demonstrated in the budget to rural development, agriculture and tourism needs to be explored further in the MLM engagement process.

Table 102: ELM Housing Policy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It is not specified when the Policy was prepared and if it was adopted.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

- The policy states that urban migration cannot be prevented or stopped. In continues that in order to prevent the rise of informal settlements, steps have to be taken to ensure that housing provision and development takes place in formal ways (p. 1-4).
- The policy proposes the provision of new housing close to existing economic nodes and main infrastructure networks (p. 6).
- The policy argues that housing must be part of integrated human settlements that have access to social, economic and state services and activities and not be stand-alone developments (p. 6).
- The policy sees the role for the state in the case of wealthier households as to make available land for housing, subject to building regulations (p. 7).

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

- The policy does not make explicit statements about rural housing provision. It is largely focused on urban areas. Through a lack of urban housing, rural areas in a case like the ELM, will, however, see informal housing increase.

Proposals

- No specific proposals regarding the spatial location of housing in Zones 5 or 6 in the Draft LSM are made.

SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: Project Response

- The status of the policy and its use and relevance for rural areas in the ELM need to be established in the engagement with the ELM.
Table 103: ELM Final IDP 2012/2013-2016/17

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The IDP was adopted in 2012.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The national outcomes are listed, including Outcome 7 regarding rural communities (p. 2).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Vaal River and the “River City-concept” is mentioned as one of the key features of the LM (p. 3).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Agri-hub is included in the “Development Concept” for the ELM (p. 14).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The “Development Triangle” in the ELM is indicated on the Development Concept as lying between Vanderbijlpark, Vereeniging and the Sebokeng CBD (p. 14-15).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tourism is seen as an area with potential (p. 3, 22, 26, 84 and 88). It is also seen a vehicle to alleviate poverty and unemployment in the LM (p. 84 and 88).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Vaal River is seen as a key factor in the ELM’s tourism sector (p. 83). This includes the Vaal 21 Initiative of the SDM (p. 83).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is a MMC for Economic Development, Planning and Tourism (p. 32).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The pressure for development on the Mantevrede AH and the conversion of this area to cluster housing is mentioned (p. 20).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is noted that land invasions are taking place on private and State land, often in the vicinity of or near to identified housing projects. The ELM is planning to make urgent work of addressing this (p. 29).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is noted that the IDP was prepared and reviewed with participation and inputs from a range of stakeholders (p. 34-36).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The contribution of Agriculture to the economy of the ELM is listed as between 1.6% and 2.3% between 2001 and 2009 (p. 81). Manufacturing ranged between 40.8% and 46.0% during the same period (p. 81).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference is made to the provision of cycle lanes in rural areas as well, as one of the ELM programmes to ensure a more networked economy (p. 101).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference is made to Agricultural research that emerged from a climate change workshop that was held by the ELM so as to get a sense of what the impacts on the sector in the ELM could be (p. 128-131).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference is made to Sharpeville under a heading of “rural communities” suggesting that townships may be seen as rural areas in the ELM (p. 134-135).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference is made to an electricity cable upgrading capital project worth R2.5 million over a three-year period. (p. 154) and a street-lighting project worth R1.5 million over a three-year period (p. 156).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS |  |
| Principle/Policy |  |
| The IDP includes very little about rural development and agriculture, but does include far more on tourism, which it regards as a key growth area for the economy of the ELM. |  |
| The focus seems to be far more on the industrial development, the residential sector and the former townships than the rural areas and agriculture. |  |
| The contribution of tourism to poverty alleviation is recognised. |  |
| Proposals |  |
| The IDP does not include proposals that contradict the identification of opportunities as set out in the Draft LSM for Zones 5 and 6. |  |
| The tourism proposals along the Vaal River fully support the same analysis in the Draft LSM. |  |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE |  |
| While the SDF includes a series of analyses, ideas and proposals regarding rural areas and agricultural development, the IDP includes very little on these aspects. This could be explored in the engagement with the ELM. |  |

Table 104: ELM IDP & Budget Process Plan 2012-2013

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Plan was adopted in 2011.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

GAUTENG RURAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN
• The Plan makes provision for the involvement of the community, the three spheres of government and other stakeholders in the IDP and Budget preparation processes (p. 3-5).

• The ELM has an IDP Rep Forum that allows for this kind of engagement to take place in a structured and focused way. The involvement of this body is provided for in the process (p. 6 and 9).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

• The plan does not include explicit statements regarding rural development and involvement by persons living in rural areas, but does seek and provide for wide participation in the IDP and Budget process by community and other stakeholders.

**Proposals**

• No explicit proposals are made regarding the development of Zones 5 and 6 in the Draft LSM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The extent of involvement by communities and stakeholders in the rural areas of the ELM, and the effectiveness of this involvement, need to be explored in the engagement process with the ELM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Table 105: ELM Land Policy 2004**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

• The Policy was adopted in 2004.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

• The policy makes provision for the lifting of the moratorium on the sale of parks in the municipality (p. 1).

• The policy specifies the challenges associated with, and the modalities of leasing and using State land (p. 2-7).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

• No specific statements are made regarding rural areas, agriculture or tourism.

**Proposals**

• No specific statements are made regarding the purchase, transfer or the development of land in the areas that are known as Zones 5 and 6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The ELM’s policy towards land in the rural areas needs to be explored in the engagement process with the ELM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Table 106: ELM SDBIP 2012/13**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

• The Plan was adopted in 2012.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

• Under “Organisational Delivery SDBIP” reference is made to:
  o The preparation and implementation of an Agricultural Development Plan/Strategy, which has a weight of 5% (p. 18: Part 1).
  o Tourism initiatives that need to be implemented. The weight is 5% (p. 18: Part 1).

• Under “Capital expenditure” (total annual budget R367 488 750) reference is made to:
  o The upgrading of an overhead line at no. 66 Houtkop AH: Annual allocation R500k (p. 1: Part 2).
  o The upgrading of 11 kV rural lines: Annual allocation R500k (p. 1: Part 2).
  o The installation of streetlights on transformer poles in “rural area”: Annual allocation R500k (p. 1: Part 2).
• Under “Monthly revenue and expenditure by vote”, it is indicated that Vote 6: Economic Development Planning (which includes tourism) is allocated:
  o R16 324 985 revenue by vote (total for ELM: R4 520 457 165);
  o R56 452 312 under operational expenditure (total for ELM: R4 152 968 415); and
  o R0 under capital expenditure (R367 488 750) (p. 1: Part 3).

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The SDBIP indicates budget allocation and expenditure on rural areas, tourism and agriculture.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 107: Emfuleni Local Municipality Spatial Development Framework**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The SDF was adopted in 2012.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

• The study brief did not include any specific reference to rural areas (p. 1).
• It is mentioned that data was sourced from, amongst others, GDARD (p. 2).
• It is noted that the ELM area is ‘separated’ in two by the N1: west of the N1 (most rural – small holdings and farmland) and east of the N1 (mostly urban). The later also includes large industrial activities (Mittal) and sizeable concentrations of people in towns (Vereeniging, Vanderbijlpark and Three Rivers) and former townships (Boipatong, Bophelong, Sharpeville and Sebokeng). Coal mining takes place on the south-eastern boundary of the LM (p. 8).
• The Sedibeng SDF is referred to and its key features listed (p. 12-13). This includes the proposals for rural development and tourism in the SDM SDF (p. 13).
• It is noted that, despite the huge rural land portion of the ELM, 88% of the population lives in urban areas. This, it argues, requires well-managed urban development (p. 16).
• The urban population of the ELM (2010) was estimated at 600 320 and the rural at 79 976 (p. 16).
• Very few people are employed in Agriculture in the ELM (not even 2 000 people), which, it is argued, suggests that the farms are used more for rural residential than commercial purposes (p. 21-22).
• It is states that the Vaal River area holds a significant tourism potential (p. 41).
• The SDF includes a map indicating agricultural potential and another regarding environmental sensitivity (p. 47-48). It is noted that the areas of high agricultural potential have been demarcated as hubs by the GP and this ‘use’ overrides all others. It will hence be respected as such, as will the ecologically irreplaceable sites (p. 49).
• Sharpeville Dam is described as having “significant recreational opportunities” (p. 50).
• It is noted that the ELM is still largely rural in character, with a significant urban component. It is noted that there, however, is urban pressure on the rural areas (p. 50).
• Reference is made to a mountain range in the south-western area of the ELM that is both environmentally sensitive and has tourism potential (p. 50).
• The map indicating existing community facilities points out that the bulk of these are located on the eastern side of the ELM (p. 52).
• Figure 16 indicates very limited minerals and mining in the area – only alluvial diamonds. The surrounding areas have coal, gold and iron deposits and mining activities (p. 53).
• Tourist facilities are primarily located in the eastern half of the ELM (Figure 17, p. 54).
• Agricultural holdings are located in the areas as indicated for small-scale agricultural activities in Zones 5 and 6. (Figure 18, p. 56).
The rural nature of the bulk of the ELM and the high portion of rural residential uses to the west of the N1 are again listed (p. 57 and 70).

Tourism potential is noted again (p. 69).

The need for land use management to protect the tourism potential and rural activities and amenities is stated (p. 69).

Agriculture is discussed, and the different land sizes of farms and legal provisions in this regard discussed (p. 69).

The GDARD’s Maize Triangle Initiative is discussed (p. 70).

The GP’s Agricultural Hub Initiative is discussed. It is indicated that the area is protected to ensure that it can continue its agricultural functions (p. 71).

It is noted that while the tourism sector is small in terms of its contribution of the local economy, it employs many people and has a lot of potential for further growth and income generation (p. 68). Emerald Casino is mentioned (p. 68-69).

The document notes that the Vaal Waterfront has been subdivided into small, largely privately-owned segments and is used by especially weekend holiday makers. It does, however, mean that it has become increasingly inaccessible and isolated from the broad public (p. 69).

The Sharpeville Memorial Initiative is seen as holding huge tourism potential (p. 69).

It is noted that many of the larger farm portions that are used for commercial farming are located in the central and northern parts of the study area and are located on lower potential land. The main agricultural activity is cultivation, rather than cattle farming (p. 70).

It is indicated that the area adjacent to the Vaal River and Sharpeville has tourism potential (p. 90).

The ELM SDF makes provision for dedicated industrial and commercial areas that will concentrate industrial activities in certain areas, and restrict the piecemeal development of land that could be used for tourism and agriculture for this purpose. Using holdings for such purposes also damages the tourism and agricultural activities on surrounding properties and the wider region (p. 112).

It is indicated that the ELM SDF supports the notion of the Agricultural Hubs, and the Emfuleni Agricultural Hub in its area, but that it wants to see Mantevrede AH and the Lochvaal Barrage area excluded from the hub. The reasons are (1) the proposals in earlier plans (the earlier SDF), (2) the need for weekend holiday housing, and (3) the fact that the area is no longer being used for commercial agricultural purposes. It is also indicated that there are valuable portions of agricultural land scattered in the ELM that can be used for urban development as well as for urban agricultural purposes, including by communities (p. 113, 119, 129 and 136).

An open space network is proposed. (Figure 24, p. 114 and 115-116).

Extensive provision is made for tourism along the Vaal River, at the Lochvaal Barrage, Three Rivers, the Emerald Casino and Sharpeville. The concept of the ELM being a “River City” features very strongly in this concept. A key consideration is for the whole public to be given access to the Vaal River and not only the rich (p. 185-199)

The SDF regards the protection of agricultural land as of crucial importance, and for agricultural land to be protected (Page 199-203). It provides for three rural subdivision typologies on land, subject to the approval of the DRDCLR, and provided that the land is not located in the Agricultural Hub, and that does not fall under the provisions of the Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, No 70 of 1970, and that the ELM may hence decide on. The ELM may also make recommendations to the DRDCLR on subdivisions in cases where the decision-making powers resort with the department. The rural types are:

- Rural residential areas earmarked for rural lifestyle living: A minimum subdivided stand size of 1 hectare is supported with stands ranging from 1 to 4 hectares;
- Small farms earmarked for intensive farming purposes: These portions range from between 4 and 20 hectares in size; and
- Commercial farms earmarked for extensive farming purposes: These portions are larger than 20 hectares (p. 203-204)

Agri-industry is provided for and location criteria for such industries specified, as well as measures to prevent environmental pollution emanating from such activities put forward (p. 204-206).

Provision is made in the SDF’s Land Use Management Zones for a “Very low-density residential zone” that will maintain the rural and natural environment, and allow a rural lifestyle, as well as an Agricultural Zone where high-potential agricultural soils will be protected and low-density residential land-uses allowed. (Table 36, p. 212).

Agriculture is listed as one of the Land Use Categories in the SDF, and specified what is permitted in the zone (Zone 11). This excludes land uses that can be regarded as incompatible. The provisions around subdivision of land in the Zone are also provided (p. 214, 229 and 253). The Zone makes provision for
Rural Residential as land use (p. 226).

- Another Zone, ‘Rural Residential’ (Zone 4) seeks to provide for those choosing a rural lifestyle, but developing the land and living in such a way that the rural and natural environment is not compromised (p. 227).
- Spatial guidelines for preserving Agricultural land are provided (p. 242).
- A series of measures by which the implementation of the ELM SDF can be evaluated/assessed and monitored, are provided, including as one, ‘the way and extent to which agricultural land is protected’ (p. 243).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- The ELM SDF makes provision of rural development, agriculture, agri-processing and tourism. It seeks also to protect these uses by managing urban development.
- Given the sizeable population and the high concentration of the population in the urban areas of the LM, the ELM is very clear about the fact that it has to provide for this population and considers the agricultural areas with this urban population and its needs in mind.

**Proposals**

- The tourism-related land uses are strongly supportive of the tourism-related land identification process in the Draft LSM (Zones 5 and 6).
- While the ELM SDF is fully supportive of the Agri-hub concept in principle, it is not fully supportive of the specific spatial area of proclamation. The SDF does propose using certain of the areas in the hub for land uses that are not in accordance with the proclamation of the hub.
- It is not clear to what extent the SDF supports the small triangle of small scale agriculture in the triangle to the west and of Vanderbijlpark in Zone 6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The ELM SDF is broadly supportive of the identification of opportunities as indicated in the Draft LSM.
- The issue around the Agricultural hub needs to be taken further in the engagement process.
- The detail around the location of small-scale agriculture and rural economic activities in Zones 5 and 6 need to be deliberated in the engagement session with the ELM.

**MIDVAAL LOCAL MUNICIPALITY**

**Table 108: Midvaal Central Region Spatial Development Framework**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Midvaal Central Region SDF was adopted in January 2011 (cover page).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- This RSDF is for one for the three regions: East, Central and West (p. 3).
- This is essentially the area around the strategic R59 Development Corridor. It essentially includes the urban area of the MLM (p. 4).
- The small segment in the zone (the northern segment) to the east of the Klip River is earmarked for high-value agriculture. The zone directly adjacent to the K59 is mixed – it has light industrial and commercial, residential and retail uses (the Meyerton CBD), tourism (Bass Lake) and a segment of mining (the Glen Douglas Mine). The rest of the zone is earmarked for “Rural Residential” (p. 5).
- It is noted that in a number of the developments in the zone, water is obtained through boreholes and sewerage is taken care of by septic tanks (p. 5).
- The MLM and Randwater provide piped water (p. 10-12).
- A section of the corridor (the middle segment) has limited sanitation capacity (p. 16).
- The whole zone is served with electricity (p. 17).
- It is envisaged that through further residential development in the area, Meyerton and Henley on Klip will be spatially integrated (p. 7).
- The area is set to become a high-intensity mixed use corridor with industrial expansion seen to expand
along especially the western side of the R59 (Map 6, p. 14). This development is set to be of the business park format as well take place on individual industrial/business erven (p. 23).

- Provision is also made for Breaking New Ground development and high-density residential development (Map 6, p. 14).
- Reference is made to Transit Orientated Development (high density, intensity land uses along a corridor) (p. 14).
- It is proposed that the agricultural holdings in the area will be used for agricultural and rural residential purposes to prevent urban sprawl (p. 19).
- Reference is made to agricultural land in the zone that will be developed into residential areas (p. 20).
- Phasing of development is provided for (short, medium and long). The Meyerton node and the area between the PWV18 and K154 bridges (the “Heineken area”) are to be developed over the short term (p. 32).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- The area for which this RSDF is prepared is primarily a mixed land use zone with very little rural and agricultural land. There is, however, still provision for a number of erven to be used for these uses and for tourism.
- In some cases there is a sense that the MLM sees most of the erven as moving from agricultural to residential and industrial uses.
- This is an area that is of major importance to the future development of not only for the MLM and the SDM, but also so the GP.

**Proposals**

- The proposals for the zone are of a higher intensity than identified in the Draft LSM.
- The value of the land and the importance of the development for the MLM, the SDM and the GP do warrant such higher-intensity land-uses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION / PROJECT RESPONSE**

- In the detailing out of the GRDLRPs the proposals for the zone will need to be adapted to reflect the proposals in the MLM RSDF.

Table 109: Midvaal Agricultural Policy Draft Report 2011

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- The report is dated 14 January 2011 (cover page).

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The document is part of a bid that entailed the “formulation of SDF/RSDF, IDP and land use policies and strategies for the Midvaal Local Municipality” (cover page).
- The document refers to Sections 24 (Environment) and 27 (Health care, food, water and social security) as base/grounding for the policy (p. 2).
- The policy has as its objective to ensure that “high (potential) agricultural land is adequately preserved so as to be productive for current and future generations” (p. 3).
- Reference is made to the “food basket of Gauteng-status” of the MLM and the need to protect the area’s agricultural land from urban development pressures from the CoJ and the other LMs in the SDM (p. 3).
- Issues to be attended to in the policy include:
  - Providing mechanisms and incentives for developing the medium potential agricultural land into smaller plot sizes; and
  - To determine appropriate subdivision criteria for low potential agricultural land so as to ensure sustainability (p. 3).
- It is indicated that land is becoming very scarce in the northern part of the MLM; hence the move southwards, resulting in agricultural land being placed under pressure. It is especially agricultural holdings smaller than 5 hectares that are being placed under such pressure (p. 5).
- As most of the MLM’s agricultural land falls outside the reach of existing town planning schemes,
guidance is required (p. 5).

- It is highlighted that farming portions greater than 20 hectares need to be protected, as these are commercially viable (p. 5).

- The (1) policy objectives, (2) impacts of the policy, and (3) decision-making criteria cover issues around sustainability of the high-value agricultural resources, issues around subdivision, water, amenity, decision-making of applications and stimulating investment in agriculture, and alternative agricultural practices (p. 13-14).

- The norms and standards propose that:
  - The subdivision of agricultural land should not result in:
    - Units that cannot carry 60 livestock units on land used for grazing,
    - A unit of 100 hectares used for dry crop production; and
    - A unit of 20 hectares on irrigated land, with the provision that the rights to and capacity of the water source is available for 10 hectares of land (p. 17).
  - Small holdings are not established on productive or high-potential agricultural land (p. 18).
  - Where piped water is not available (excluding borehole water), the minimum size for subdivision of medium to low potential agricultural land is 5 hectares. Where piped water is available, the minimum size is 1 hectare (p. 18).
  - An agricultural holding can be subdivided to a minimum size of 8,565 square metres in terms of the Agricultural Holdings Act No 22 of 1919 (p. 18).

- The policy inter alia covers the number of dwelling units to be developed on agricultural land, employee accommodation on agricultural land, norms and standards for land use change, the establishment of agri-villages, agri-industries and game farms and general land use criteria (p. 18-27).

- The policy includes a section dealing with “investment opportunities in agriculture”. Two opportunities were identified (for which funds and training opportunities also exist):
  - Hydroponics, and
  - Bamboo planting and farming (p. 28-33).

- The conclusion notes that while agriculture constitutes only 4% of the national GDP, it employs 10% of total reported employment (p. 34).

- It is inter alia recommended that:
  - The policy be approved (not sure if this was done),
  - The principles and ideas in the policy be transferred to the IDP and SDFs prepared by the MLM,
  - The town planning schemes be amended to accommodate the norms and standards as set out in the policy, and
  - An investment pack must be prepared to attract investors interested in pursuing the farming options in the municipality (p. 35).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- The policy is strongly supportive of the background to and reasons for the preparation of the GRDLRPs.

**Proposals**

- While the policy does not make specific spatial proposals, the norms and standards do protect high-value land.
- The statements around subdivision sizes are important to consider in the detailing of the zones and the specifications around the three land use types/criteria sets in the GRDLRPs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 110: Midvaal Local Municipality Annual Report 2012**

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- Adopted on 6 December 2012 (cover page).

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

**GAUTENG RURAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN**

126
The MLM plans to target 19.5% of the un-services households, mainly in rural areas in 2012/2013 financial year to deliver basic refuse services (p. 19).

Service delivery in the MLM stood at 48% of households in rural areas (p. 66).

The EPWP grant will be used to expand street cleansing services to rural areas (p. 67).

The rural population is 64% of the Midvaal population (p. 92).

Poverty is a major problem in the rural areas (p. 96).

There are libraries in the rural nodes and a number of the rural areas, including Bantu Bonke (p. 101).

Food security and the protection of the integrity of the agricultural potential is a key issue in the agricultural areas of the MLM (p. 92).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- The Annual report indicates a commitment to rural development, protection of agricultural areas and integrity and support of tourism.

**Proposals**

- The document does not make specific statements about development in the zones as included in the Draft LSM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE / CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provisions</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td>XXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- There is not anything in the document that requires further attention.

Table 111: MLM Density Policy 2011

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- The Policy was adopted in January 2011.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The document notes the primary purpose of the policy as providing a tool to manage spatial density within the MLM to ensure that “appropriate densities are achieved that adhere to sound planning principles and sustainable urban development” (p. 1).

- It is noted that the policy will be incorporated into the MLM SDF (p. 1).

- The attainment of the desired densities is seen as a joint venture between the public and the private sectors (p. 3).

- Important for the GRDLRPs is the prospect of the density policy in preventing/restricting sprawl, and protecting environmental and agricultural resources (p. 3).

- The current densities in the bulk of the MLM are very low – in the agricultural areas it is not greater than 1 person per hectare (p. 5 and Figure 2).

- In the Henley-on-Klip, Riversdale and Rothdene areas the density varies between 2 and 5 persons per hectare. In Lakeside and Meyerton densities are in excess of 10 persons per hectare (p. 5).

- Land use and transport integration, an Urban Development Boundary, and clustered, medium-density forms of housing are proposed (p. 12-17).

- The policy directives include the standard set of densification principles, tools and provisions (p. 17-22).

- A set of “density misconceptions” are discussed and clarified (p. 22-23).

- Implementation of the policy provides for a combination of guidance, local knowledge and discretion as to the suitability of different densities in different settings in the LM area (p. 25-29).

- The policy proposes (1) setting a base density that will be applied across the entire municipal area and (2) providing criteria as to when a higher density would be acceptable. This will, amongst others, create a varied, diverse urban form. The base density is 20 units/hectare for single residential developments and 25 units/hectare for sectional title developments (p. 30).

- In the rural nodes of Henley-on-Klip and Highbury the density is set at 5 units/hectare for single residential and 10 for sectional title development, Ohenimuri at 20 and 25 units/hectare respectively, and at De Deur both at 1.26 units/hectare (p. 32 and p. 37-39).

- A differentiation is made regarding (1) agricultural holdings and small holdings and (2) farm portions, with a further differentiation made between farm portions in terms of the size of the farm portions and whether the portions have access to piped water or not. In all these cases the densities are very low, the
It is regarded as important that:

- Reserve and increased mining activities in the area, which would most likely have a negative impact on agriculture in the zone.
- There is a concern about increased urbanisation pressures from the EMM on the Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve and increased mining activities in the area, which would most likely have a negative impact on agriculture in the zone.
- Electricity piped water provision is limited in the zone. Where it is provided, this is provided by Rand Water. Electricity is provided by Eskom, except the Vaal Marina, which is served by the MLM.

### IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

#### Principle/Policy
- The policy supports the prevention of sprawl and the protection of agricultural land and areas that are ecologically sensitive. It also puts in place ‘rules’ regarding the development in rural nodes, agricultural holdings and farm portions that are aimed at protecting and enhancing the rural integrity and productive capacity of rural areas.
- The provision of incentives in the form of public investment for nodal formation and concentration in certain areas, while limiting it in others, could also be explored for rural nodal formation in Zones 5 and 7.

#### Proposals
- While the proposals regarding densities and the desired development are more detailed than those in the Draft LSM, their thrust and intent are fully in support of those for Zones 5 and 7.

### SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE
- The policy and its potential use for rural development (especially regarding rural nodal formation) in the LM need to be discussed in the engagement session with the LM.

---

### Table 112: Midvaal Eastern Region Spatial Development Framework 2011

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The MLM Eastern RSDF was adopted in January 2011.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The plan seeks to provide more detailed development guidelines for the future development of the regions than the MLM SDF (p. 3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The area covers the section of the MLM between the Central Zone and the Lesedi LM and the Mpumalanga Province (Map 1, p. 4).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The MLM SDF indicates the area for primarily “Extensive Farming” and on a far smaller scale “Rural Residential” and “Residential” development (i.e. the Vaal Marina) (Map 2.1, p. 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A key structuring element in the zone is the Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve (p. 7).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is noted that a large segment of the area is an area with many agricultural holdings that create a buffer between the urban/industrial areas of the MLM (the Central Zone) and the extensive agricultural and intensive farming activities in this zone (p. 7).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is one of the GP’s proclaimed agricultural hubs (p. 7).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the west of the zone is the Bantu Bonke (Village) CRDP node (p. 7).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are some small-scale informal settlements in the zone (p. 7).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The main corridors in the zone are also regarded as “tourism corridors” (K83, K135 and K167) (p. 10). The plan notes that these routes may need to be upgraded over time should the tourism sector grow as envisaged (p. 10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piped water provision is limited in the zone. Where it is provided, this is provided by Rand Water. Electricity is provided by Eskom, except the Vaal Marina, which is served by the MLM (p. 11).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is a concern about increased urbanisation pressures from the EMM on the Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve and increased mining activities in the area, which would most likely have a negative impact on agriculture in the zone (p. 16).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| It is regarded as important that:
While it is stated that “mining has potential in the Midvaal area”, it is noted that the only operational farming practices to commercial agriculture are used for “several purposes ranging from rural residential to commercial agriculture” (p. 21).

The MLM is described as “a primarily rural area” (p. 21).

Other than Meyerton, which is described as the “highest order town” in the LM, the other towns are described as “mainly service centres to the surrounding rural areas”. It is also noted that “the towns are surrounded by agricultural holdings, which are mainly used for rural residential purposes, and extensive farming areas” (p. 21).

The MLM is described as a “primarily rural area” (p. 21).

The other, more rural service-centre-type towns are listed as Walkerville, De Deur and Henley-on-Klip (p. 21).

It is noted that the agricultural holdings are used for “several purposes ranging from rural residential and farming practices to commercial agriculture” (p. 21).

The Vaal Marina area and developments around the Vaal Dam area are described as peri-urban (p. 21).

While it is stated that “mining has potential in the Midvaal area”, it is noted that the only operational mining in the area is at Vaal Marina (p. 16).

The vision for the area is to maintain the predominantly agricultural character and for it to be utilised for intensive agriculture and crop production. At the same time, to make more of the tourism potential the area has, while still retaining its rural character (p. 16).

The RDSF envisages and indicates a much larger (expanded) segment for tourism around the Vaal Dam and the Vaal Marina area than is current the case (Map 8, p. 17).

Routes K135 and K167, and to a lesser extent KB3, are to be promoted as tourism corridors (p. 18).

A precinct plan for Bantu Bonke is proposed. This plan will consolidate the residential segment, identify more land for economic activities and also identify land for further residential development (p. 18).

Reference is made to a planned MPCC in Bantu Bonke (p. 18). In other MLM plans it comes across as if the MPCC has now been built.
mine in the area is the Glen Douglas Mine, situated near Randvaal, which extracts dolomite (p. 21).

- Rural residential, which is noted as occurring “in the form of farmhouses and houses on agricultural holdings”, is “most concentrated in the north-western part of the municipal area, and more specifically around the R82 to the west” (p. 22).
- There are a number of informal settlements in the MLM, both in the form of “shack farming” and informal settlements (p. 22).
- It is noted that the agricultural holdings in the MLM are used for “small, intensive agricultural purposes, secondary industries, or pure residential purposes” (p. 22).
- On the SDF (2012) for the MLM, Henley on Klip, De Deur, Walkerville and Tedderfield are identified as “Rural Nodes” (p. 23).
- The Tedderfield area, Henley on Klip, the Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve, Bezuidenhoutsberg and the Vaal Marina are identified on the SDF as “Tourism Precincts” (p. 23).
- The bulk of the current and envisaged economic activity in the area is commercial and industrial and takes place along the R59 Corridor (p. 23).
- More intensive residential activity is set to take place in the area to the east of the R59 and the eastern border of the MLM (e.g. Eye of Africa and Savanna City) (p. 23).
- A Rural Node (Bantu Bonke), with an MPCC, is located on the eastern border of the MLM where the PWV 22 02 exists the municipality (p. 23).
- The contribution of Agriculture to the GDP is listed as constituting 2.6% in 2009 (p. 29).
- Manufacturing contributed 25.1% to the GDP in 2009 (p. 29).
- Only 2% of those employed in 2009 were employed in the Agriculture sector, while the figure for Manufacturing was 18% (p. 30).
- It is noted that the “majority of people coming to this area are people involved in the manufacturing sector or service sector”, due to the new business development in the MLM and constitute people that want to be closer to their work in the MLM, having formerly lived in the CoJ (p. 36).
- The MLM is noted as having agricultural and tourism potential, and that this is abetted by “the area’s Highveld climate” (p. 37).
- Extensive reference is made to the ecologically sensitive areas and threatened animal and plant species in the MLM (p. 38-40).
- The lack of protection for areas surrounding the Suikerbosrand nature reserve is noted as a concern (p. 40).
- Conservancies (voluntary bodies that decide and agree to cooperatively manage their natural resources in a sustainable way) are mentioned and the highly effective and awarded Gauteng Conservancy Association that was formed in February 2003, is discussed (p. 41-42).
- Reference is made to the primary habitat of the MLM as being “grassland”. It is indicated that there is a misconception that this habitat is not important. It is also noted that this habitat has been highly damaged in SA and that it must be protected in the LM (p. 42).
- Pollution by manufacturing, irrigation agriculture and other activities is seen as a threat (p. 42).
- The area between the R54 and the R42 is identified as an “Agriculture/Low density Residential/Industrial Zone”, but within an “Environmental Control Zone” (p. 43). Agri-villages are proposed in this zone, but with the understanding that the environment is not damaged (p. 43).
- Tourism and Low-density Residential is identified for the Eye of Africa and the Vaal Dam area (p. 44). It is noted that the EMF needs to be reviewed in order to promote a range of housing densities within the Vaal Marina area, which is included in the Urban Development Boundary as per the area’s SDF (p. 44).
- It is stated that all development in the area has to comply with the Midvaal Environmental Management Plan to protect the high-potential farm areas (p. 44).
- Reference is made to the agricultural holdings having a lesser, but important impact on the surface and ground water quality (p. 45).
- Air pollution far above international standards are mentioned as a key concern, also for tourism (p. 46).
- The MLM IDP has a whole section devoted to tourism (p. 46). The Vaal Dam and River are regarded as key tourism areas (p. 47).
- The creation of a Sedibeng Regional Tourism Association is mentioned. This is seen as amongst others, holding the potential to integrate and align the actions of all the actors in the sector (p. 47).
- Poverty in the rural areas is noted as deep, and the rendering of welfare services in these areas as problematic, due to poor public transport and travelling distances. (This is an issue relevant to all public facilities and services.) It is noted that these issues must be considered in developmental initiatives in the area, including LED ventures (p. 51).
- Fewer community facilities are to be found in the lower density, more rural areas (p. 53).
• Mobile services are proposed for the provision of public services in the rural areas (p. 57).
• It is noted that ICT has made rural areas more accessible (p. 59).
• Population densities are low in the rural areas, which makes the provision of (viable) public transport services problematic (p. 62).
• It is noted that 82% of the households in the MLM receive waterborne sewerage services, which is regarded as high, given the rural nature, low densities and vast extent of the area (p. 68).
• There are no refuse removal services in the agricultural and rural areas. This is regarded as problematic given the pollution threat this holds in this LM with its many naturally sensitive areas (p. 76).
• The condition of roads (gravel) in the rural areas is regarded as poor (p. 77).
• 64% of the population in the MLM is noted as living in rural areas, which makes the provision of public services difficult (p. 85).
• Rural development and poverty alleviation in rural areas are noted as two of the key issues for development in the area (p. 88).
• Tourism is seen as a key economic activity (p. 88, 99 and 107).
• The mission statement of the MLM includes the improvement of conditions in both urban and rural areas (p. 90).
• Food security is mentioned as a component of rural development (p. 96 and 97).
• National policy documents and the SDM growth and development plans regarding rural development are mentioned as important by the MLM in its planning for development in its area of jurisdiction (p. 115 and 118).
• Agriculture and Tourism are, in accordance with the SDM’s strategies seen as key economic focus areas (p. 118).
• The need to integrate and link urban and rural development, and to ensure that these are mutually supportive, is noted (p. 120).
• The need to strike a balance between tourism, manufacturing and agriculture is one of the MLM’s SDF’s eight development principles (p. 121).
• The promotion of tourism is the MLM’s SDF third development principle and is also noted under sections devoted to LED (p. 122 and 124-127, 142, 147 and 435).
• Henley on Klip is noted as a key tourism area (p. 126).
• The retention of a 1km wide buffer zone of low-intensity and compatible land uses along the Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve is mentioned (p. 126).
• Rural LED is mentioned as crucial (p. 126).
• Rural land uses are supported in terms of provincial policy outside the Gauteng Urban Development Boundary, but it is cautioned that this must be line with provincial policies to protect these areas. The following activities are supported: Extensive agriculture, conservation/nature areas and tourism and related activities, recreational activities, farm stalls and home industries, rural residential, agricultural holdings, and related developments (p. 128). [This may possibly not include the rural economic and small scale farming activities as being put forward in the Draft LSM.]
• Rural nodes are viewed as the third tier in an urban hierarchy of nodes, not as part of a different, rural, hierarchy. These are located primarily along the R82, with only Henley on Klip not being on this corridor (p. 130 and 23).
• It is suggested that MPCCs should preferably, but need not be part of a Rural Node (p. 131).
• Bantu Bonke is classified as an Agri-Village. It has a hydroponic pilot project. It is noted that at provincial and national level villages and pilots like this one are regarded as very important (p. 131 and 132).
• Specifications, norms and standards for Rural Nodes regarding services and retail facilities are provided (p. 132-133).
• In addition to the other nodes mentioned above, the Rural Node of “Waterval” is also mentioned (p. 133, Table 4).
• It is proposed that “limited small scale and light industrial/commercial development can and should be accommodated in the rural areas at certain predetermined nodal points.” The nodes of De Deur, Walkerville and Tedderfield are mentioned (p. 135).
• While rural residential development is supported, it is done subject to strict guidelines as set out in the Midvaal Density Policy (p. 136-137).
• Intensive agriculture, if well planned and maintained is seen as a natural barrier to future urban expansion (p. 137).
• The Vaal Marina Area is seen as a very important node and also here strict guidelines for development apply to protect and maintain it (p. 137).
• Land reform and “rural LED development” is seen as crucial and fully supported (p. 137).
The MLM IDP is fully supportive of rural development and the promotion of agriculture and tourism in the area. The MLM IDP recognises the need to protect the environmental assets of the area. These are regarded as crucial for the sustained economic development of the area.

**Proposals**

- The proposals in the MLM IDP for Zone 5 are supportive of the Draft LSM.
- The proposals in the MLM IDP for Zone 7 are not necessarily opposed to the Draft LSM depending on how wide small-scale agri-based rural development is defined. The IDP does, most likely suggest a far more intensive economic and more urban-based activity than the Draft LSM suggests. The future role of the three “rural nodes” on the K57 (i.e. De Deur, Walkerville and Tedderfield) is also not clear in such a more urban-based economy.

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- The MLM IDP and the Draft LSM are in general very well aligned.
- The detail around the development in Zone 7 needs to be clarified in the engagement phase. It may be that Zone 7 needs to be revisited by the project team to better align it with the proposals as set out in the MLM IDP.

---

### Table 114: Midvaal Spatial Development Framework 2011

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- MLM SSF adopted in January 2011.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The MLM is, together with the Emfuleni LM, described as the major economic node in the southern
• It is indicated that the R59 freeway ties the Emfuleni LM and the MLM to the EMM (p. 4).
• It is indicated that 50% of the MLM’s rural area is taken up by extensive farming (p. 7).
• The Suikerbosrand and Vaal River are seen as key natural features impacting on the physical structure of the MLM (p. 7).
• The key settlements in the MLM take place on two corridors:
  o The R59: Waterval, Randvaal, Henley-on-Klip and Meyerton; and
  o The R82: Tedderfield, Walkerville and De Deur (p. 7).
• The water network in the MLM is concentrated to the west of the R82 and to the east of the R59 (p. 16).
  A number of areas in in the MLM do not have a piped water connection from the MLM, but from Rand Water (p. 12-16).
• Groundwater is used for irrigation for agricultural purposes. Large quantities of water are available in the dolomite areas in the MLM. While it is underutilised, there is concern that when this is utilised, it must be done cautiously to prevent sinkholes (p. 13).
• There is very little spare capacity in the water network, which was designed and built for a much lower density of settlement and lower numbers of people than are currently living in the area (p. 16).
• Approximately 82% of households in the MLM have waterborne sewerage (p. 16).
  o It is stated that it is mostly farm labourers and residents of informal settlements that do not have access to “proper sanitation facilities” (p. 16).
• Only a small part of the municipal area is provided with electricity by the MLM. The rest is provided by Escom (p. 21).
  o It is stated that it is mostly farm labourers and residents of informal settlements that do not have access to electricity (p. 21).
• While the north-south road network in the MLM is fine, there are insufficient east-west connections (p. 21).
• Public transport is the key means of transport amongst the poor living in the more rural areas of the MLM (p. 24).
• The Midvaal Strategic Environmental Management Plans (SEMP) dates back to the year 2008. It has “Environmental Control Zones (ECZs)”. It also includes “parameters (natural elements/features) around which cannot be negotiated” (p. 24-25).
• The ECMs prescribe in:
  o Zone 5: Agri-villages, extensive agriculture, protection of natural features, and high-density residential and industrial uses; and
  o Zone 7: Tourism, low-density residential, and settlement establishment only to be approved on very low potential agricultural land (p. 25-26)
• The SDF has eight development principles. A number of these speak explicitly about rural development and agriculture. The principles emphasise the protection and enhancement of agriculture and the protection of the natural resource base (p. 27-55).
• The SDF provides for:
  o Nodal development along the R82 and a far more intensive corridor development along the R59 (p. 28);
  o The expansion of the Vaal Marina (p. 35);
  o The maintenance of the rural, agricultural and ecological features/elements (p. 28);
  o The development of a regional open space system (p. 29); and
  o The expansion of tourism activities in the MLM – the Vaal Dam, Klip River, Henley on Klip (i.e. Bass Lake) (p. 35).
• There is a sizeable dolomite-rich area along the R59 and on the northern boundary of the MLM with the CoJ (p. 32).
• The major focus of urban development will be to the east of the R59 corridor.
• A MLM Urban Development Boundary is provided for (p. 40).
• A hierarchy of nodes is proposed, but without specifying that urban and rural are not the same, and that the location of rural nodes at the bottom of an urban settlement hierarchy relegates them to the lowest players in a typology that is not about rural (p. 41 and Map 5.1). Rural nodes are to ‘provide both basic services and shopping opportunities to rural communities’ (p. 46).
• LED in both the urban and rural parts of the MLM is proposed (p. 41).
• The rural nodes that are proposed are all on the R82 and the R59 (p. 43 and Map 5.1).
• Four MPCCs are to be developed: Bantu Bonke, Lakeside, Ohenimuri and Randvaal (p. 43).
• Bantu Bonke is classified as an agri-village (p. 44).
Key issues in the zone are:

- Upgrading of the R82 route to K-route standards to improve safety conditions and capacity on the route;
- Proper land use management along the R82;
- The management of residential development pressures in the north-eastern parts of the region;
- Conservation and protection of the ridges, which are earmarked as tourism precincts;

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- The SDF strongly supports the retention and utilisation of the agricultural potential of the MLM, the conservation and management of the ecologically sensitive areas and natural assets, rural development and the use and further development of the municipality’s tourism potential.

**Proposals**

- The proposals for both Zones 5 and 7 are in line with the analyses and land uses as set out in the Draft LSM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- There is a strong correlation between the MLM SDF and the Draft LSM. The detailing out of the SDF in the three RSDFs confirms this, and also raises some areas that need to be clarified in the engagement session with the MLM.
- The placing of ‘rural nodes’ at the bottom of what is essentially an urban-based nodal system should be discussed in the engagement process. It may be that a unique rural nodal classification could instead be developed.

### Table 115: Midvaal Western Region Spatial Development Framework

#### YEAR AND STATUS

- The RSDF was adopted in January 2011.

#### DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT

- It is noted that the RSDF seeks to provide more detailed proposals regarding the spatial development of the Western Region of the MLM area (p. 3).
- The zone is described as an extensive rural environment interrupted by a few isolated urban precincts with ridges like Platberg and Perdeberg, which are classified as tourism precincts of the MLM and the Klip River, which runs through the north-eastern parts of the LM (p. 8).
- The area also includes the Eye of Africa residential estate, the Ohenimuri Township and the Doornkuil/Savannah City development (p. 8).
- The central and north-eastern parts of the zone are still fairly undivided with several large farm portions still remaining (p. 8).
- A range of both legal and illegal land uses occur along the R82 which runs through the western part of the region (p. 8). The land uses include general dealers/shops, auto traders, scrapyard, panel-beaters, transport businesses, brickmaking, restaurants and taverns. As the route will eventually become a K-route, no direct access can be given to such uses on the route (p. 8-9).
- It is noted that in the consultation process during the preparation of the plan it emerged that there is a strong feeling among the community that the rural residential character of the area needs to be maintained (p. 9).
- While there is a water network in the area it is a low-capacity grid that was not meant to cater for major intensification and densification in the area (p. 10).
- Sewerage is largely done via septic tanks and VIP toilet systems (p. 10).
- The entire area is served with electricity (p. 13).
- Key issues in the zone are:
  - Upgrading of the R82 route to K-route standards to improve safety conditions and capacity on the route;
  - Proper land use management along the R82;
  - The management of residential development pressures in the north-eastern parts of the region;
  - Conservation and protection of the ridges, which are earmarked as tourism precincts;
The management of increased pressure for non-residential uses on the agricultural holdings; and
The upgrading of engineering services in the region (p. 13).

- The vision for the area is to retain its rural residential character and to act as precinct for the needs of the rural community in the area. Exceptions include the Eye of Africa, Ohenimuri and the Doornkuil precincts, which are formal, conventional residential township areas (p. 13).
- Rural Nodes in the region are De Deur, Walkerville and Tedderfield (p. 15).
- It is proposed that a MPCC be built at Ohenimuri (p. 15).
- The K77 is seen as assisting with the unlocking of the development potential along the western side of the R59 (p. 19).
- There are a number of east-west routes that connect the region to the other municipalities in the wider region and which make the area high accessible (p. 19).
- More detailed plans for the Rural Nodes are envisaged (p. 22).

### IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

#### Principle/Policy

- The plan supports the ideas around rural development that underlie the Draft LSM.

#### Summary: Proposed Action/Project Response

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>Support</th>
<th>Neutral</th>
<th>Oppose/Contest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The future of the zone for rural development, tourism and agricultural uses, given its high levels of accessibility and development pressures, need to be discussed in the engagement session.

### WESTRAND DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

**Table 116: Wesrand District Municipal IDP**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wesrand District Municipal IDP 2011 -2016; as well as the Revised Document 2012/2013.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:

- Every municipality legislatively needs a principal strategic planning instrument. For the West Rand District Municipality (hereinafter the WRDM), its Integrated Development Plan (IDP) is such an instrument, guiding the WRDM’s on-going planning, management and development actions. In addition, it acts as the local government’s blueprint in pursuing its vision for municipality in the short, medium and long term (p. 20).
- An IDP is a single inclusive strategic plan for municipalities that: integrates and co-ordinates service delivery within a municipality; forms the general basis on which annual budgets must be based; aligns the resources and capacity of the municipality within the implementation of the plan; assists a municipality in fulfilling its constitutional mandate as a developmental local government; and facilitates the process of democratisation through vigorous public participation (p. 7).

### IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

#### Principle/Policy

- In order to coordinate and align strategies and allocate the WRDM’s resources to these eight strategic goals most effectively, a number of key objectives have been identified for each. These strategic goals are as follows:
  - Strategic goal 1: Regional Development Planning;
  - Strategic goal 2: Bulk Infrastructure development/maintenance (electricity, water, solid waste, cemeteries, sewerage, roads, community/ municipal buildings);
  - Strategic goal 3: Health and Social Development;
  - Strategic goal 4: Public Safety Services (regional support services);
  - Strategic goal 5: Environmental Management;
- Strategic goal 6: Economic Development;
- Strategic goal 7: Sustainable Governance for Local Communities; and
- Strategic goal 8: Business Excellence within the WRDM (p. 20).

**Proposals**

- Provide materials and equipment for the development of gardens in areas such as Randfontein;
- Invest in economic and social infrastructure will create jobs while improving the development of the Gauteng City Region and its communities;
- Maize Triangle project to stimulate growth in the agriculture sector and promote food production and agribusinesses;
- Service delivery in rural areas;
- Inadequate resources to deal with increasing demands in agriculture, p. 24;

**Rural development planning** (p. 47):
- Ensure availability of District rural development plan and of revised Regional rural development plans;
- Rural development function to be capacitated;
- District rural development forum to be established;
- Focus on Infrastructure and services in rural areas; and
- Focus on Agri-Tourism.

**Rural Strategies** (p. 74-75)

- **Regional Rural Development Strategy:** Rural Development Strategy to be formalized in accordance with approved GDRAD policy to guide development in the region (In house in conjunction with local municipalities).
- **Fresh Produce Hub:** Establishment of fresh produce hub in the region to facilitate rural market forces (In house in conjunction with Provincial and National Departments. External sources also to be sourced).
- **Agricultural Expo and Farmers Indaba:** Annual agricultural expo and farmers indaba to be held as platform for emerging and established farmers to liaise and to interact with provincial and national government (In house in conjunction with WRDA and other local municipalities. External Funding to be sourced).
- **Rural youth development:** Training of rural youth in various disciplines (to be done in conjunction with Department of Rural Development and Land Reform)
- **Community Rural Development Projects:** Rural development projects: Identification of needs within rural areas and prioritisation of projects to attend to these needs. These include infrastructure needs as well as social and educational priority areas (To be done in-house in conjunction with local municipalities and Dept of Rural Development and Land Reform).
- **Eviction policy:** Policy to be formulated to address process of eviction, accommodation of evictees and centralized legal services. Educational workshops on relevant legislation to be held with communities (To be done in house in conjunction with Public Safety Directorates of local municipalities and the Dept of Rural Development and Land Reform).
- **Agricultural college:** Establishment of secondary and tertiary agricultural institutions to promote agricultural curriculum in the region (To be done in house in conjunction with GARD).
- **Food security:** Increase the concept of food security by means community gardens (To be done in house in conjunction with local municipalities and GARD).
- **Farmer support:** Mechanization policy: Facilitate programme to roll out tractors and other farming equipment to emerging farmers in the region (To be done in house in conjunction with local municipalities GARD).
- **Rural safety plan:** Facilitate safety and security arrangement within the rural areas (To be done in house in conjunction with Public Safety Directorates of local municipalities and the Dept of Rural Development and Land Reform).
- **Animal Health:** Facilitate animal health programmes such as inoculations and vaccinations to both emerging and commercial farmers (To be done in house in conjunction with local municipalities, State Vet and GARD. West Rand Branch also to be involved).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposal</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- Take note of projects and implementation strategies in IDP for future phases of the RDLR project;
This IDP, unlike many others does address rural areas in more detail.

Table 117: Westrand District Bioregional Plan 2012

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2012 (2nd Draft)</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:
- The purpose of the plan is to inform land-use planning, environmental assessment and authorisations, and natural resource management, by a range of sectors whose policies and decisions impact on biodiversity (p. 8).

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principles/Policy
- Supports bioregional planning and nature conservation

Proposals
- No specific proposals relevant to the Draft LSM are made.

SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE
- Compare GIS FILES with Gauteng plan
- No real relevance for rural development, except to take note of bioregions (mapping) and its implications

Table 118: Westrand District Regional Economic Development Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:
- The purpose of the plan is to provide an assessment of all the relevant economic activities and development opportunities within the main economic sectors (p. 1).

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy
- Support national policies such as NSDP, New Growth Path and the NDP.
- Principles: Rapid economic growth that is sustained and inclusive; government spending on fixed investment should be focused on localities of economic growth and/or economic potential; efforts to address past and current social inequalities should focus on people, not places. In localities with low demonstrated economic potential, government should, beyond the provision of basic services, concentrate primarily on human capital development by providing education and training, social transfers such as grants and poverty-relief programmes (p. 16-17).

Proposals
- The Agriculture sector (-2%) and mining sector (-7%) experienced negative GDP growth during the 2001 to 2005 time period. Between 2006 and 2010, the agriculture sector (-4%), the mining sector (-5%) and the manufacturing sector (-1%) experienced negative GDP growth (p. 41).
- The Agriculture sector incorporates establishments and activities that are primarily engaged in farming activities, but also includes establishments focusing on commercial hunting and game propagation and forestry, logging and fishing. The Agricultural Sector in the West Rand has repeatedly been identified as a sector with the potential to stimulate economic growth and job creation in the area. Although the sector had a reasonable growth record up until 2001, production in this sector has been in decline since 2002. In addition, agriculture still plays a minor role in terms of contribution to production value, compared to the rest of the West Rand economy. Some 15% of South Africa’s farming output is produced in the Gauteng Province. The province has a dual agricultural economy comprising of well-developed commercial farming and subsistence farming.
which is predominantly in rural areas. Half of South Africa’s agri-processing companies are operating in Gauteng. Johannesburg, Ekurhuleni and Tshwane metropolitan municipalities have more agricultural output or contribution to the GDP in Gauteng due to agro-processing activities taking place within these areas. The agricultural sector in Gauteng provides local cities and towns with daily fresh produce. And it should also be noted that a large part of Gauteng falls within the so-called Maize triangle (p. 59).

• The Gauteng Department of Agriculture and Rural Development (GDARD) launched the Maize Triangle project in October 2010. The project is at increasing Maize production in Gauteng. Agriculture plays an important role in the economy of the province and in South Africa and maize, in particular, is an important crop for many people in the country. According to GDARD officials, the areas that are currently dominated by maize fields and which forms the core of the Maize Triangle include the following: Sedibeng District Municipality (Emfuleni LM, Lesedi LM, and Midvaal LM); the then Metsweding District Municipality (the then Kungwini LM); and West Rand District Municipality (Westonaria LM, Merafong City LM, Randfontein LM). There are areas with excellent or good agricultural potential, especially in Mogale City, as well as in Westonaria and Merafong City. Mogale City is also by far the most important agricultural district in the West Rand. Even though Westonaria has been identified as an area with high potential agricultural land, it is rarely used for these purposes due to high mining activity (p. 56).

• The following list of agricultural sector initiatives in the WRDM have been identified in the Gauteng Economic Opportunity Atlas, Gauteng GDS, Gauteng Employment Growth and Development Strategy, WRDM IDP, WRDM RSDF, WRDM LED and various local municipal IDP, SDF, GDS, LED and other strategic documents, plans and strategies: Abattoir – Mogale City LM; Production of crops and associated logistics (packaging, cooling, transport and distribution) – Randfontein LM; Small-scale farming of specialised products and vegetable production – Randfontein LM; Agri-business development (production of herbs, essential oils and vegetables) – Westonaria LM; Livestock breeding programme – Westonaria LM; Nursery and instant lawn project – Westonaria LM; Hydroponics farming and poultry production in Simunye – Westonaria LM; sustainable farm projects to diversify the economic sector – Merafong LM (p. 65).

• The following agricultural products are the main agricultural export products for the WRDM: Live trees, plants, bulbs, roots, cut flowers, etc. (especially Cut Flowers); Oil seed, oleagic fruits, grain, seed, fruit, etc. (especially Ground Nuts); Milling products (especially worked cereal grains) (p. 66).

• The main agricultural import products for the WRDM are: Edible vegetables and certain roots and tubers (especially leguminous dried and shelled vegetables); Live trees, plants, bulbs, roots, cut flowers, etc. (especially live plants, roots, cuttings and mushroom spawn); Oil seed, oleagic fruits, grain, seed, fruit, etc. (especially seed, fruit and spores for sowing) (p. 66).

• Intensive commercial farming opportunities are: Labour intensive agriculture projects; Deciduous and berry fruit production; Vegetable production; Speciality vegetable production; Cut flower production; Aquaculture development; Small-scale commercial farming; Conventional crop production: maize, green maize & dry beans; Low-input maize production; Egg production; Milk; production; Broiler production; Subsistence farming: Homestead food production (i.e. cabbage, tomatoes, onion, potatoes, beans, green maize, etc.); Homestead egg laying units (p. 66).

• Other development opportunities within the agricultural sector: Demonstration plots: Plots with various crops and nursery products for the community, showing production techniques and crop options supported by extension services and access to information; Agro-processing industries/activities: Leather tanning, flour milling, dairy product processing; Agro-based tourism: Tourists visiting the large commercial farms in the area, e.g. ostrich farm; Food supplements and bio-technology development/application; Food & Beverage value chains (incl. chemicals, packaging, etc.) (pp. 66-77).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

• Strong focus on enhancing the agriculture sector and development potential in this sector.
• Take note of development proposals in rural areas
• Emphasise the need to link future rural development with tourism.

Table 119: Westrand District Regional Growth And Development Strategy
The vision of the West Rand District Regional Growth and Development Strategy is to “develop and sustain an integrated, socio-economically and economically thriving and green environment with a unified society.” This will be achieved by focusing on the following key strategic priorities: Spatial Integration; Physical Infrastructure; Economic Development; Environmental Management; Social Development; Good Governance (p. 1).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**
The Plan supports national policies such as NSDP, New Growth Path and the NDP (p. 2).

**Proposals**
- The following key strategies summarise the approach that is needed to spatially develop the district area (p. 20):
  - Managing the growth of the district; Urban edge; Infrastructure provision and management; Managing sub-urban and rural development; Developing quality places; Activity centres and nodes; Sustainable neighbourhoods and housing; Promoting and managing regional and local accessibility; Road linkages; Public transport; Pedestrians; Providing and managing environmental areas and an open space network.
  - Proposed rural service centres (p. 20): To serve specific sub municipal regions and specifically rural communities and to contain the sprawl of periphery settlements: Fochville, Tarlton and Hekpoort.
  - The West Rand District has areas with significant agricultural potential, which should be regarded as an important resource. Areas with high agricultural potential should be protected.
  - Key strategies: Expanding the Agriculture/Agro-processing industry in the district, which includes:
    - Protecting agricultural land within the District;
    - Intensify efforts to increase the availability of land for agricultural production;
    - The development and support of labour-intensive agricultural projects;
    - Promotion of skills development and management training;
    - Development of a Food Export Cluster/Agricultural Hub;
    - Introduction of new products with special focus on small-scale farming and niche markets;
    - The promotion of agro-processing focusing on a variety of products; and
    - Develop new and young upcoming agricultural entrepreneurs, SMMEs and cooperatives (p. 80).

**SUMMARY:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**
- Strong focus on enhancing the agriculture sector and development potential in this sector;
- Take note of development proposals in rural areas in Zone 6 regarding Fochville.

---

**TABLE 120: Westrand District Regional Marketing And Investment Strategy**

**YEAR AND STATUS**
- March 2012.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**
- The goal of the WRDM investment strategy is to formulate guidelines for the WRDM for retaining the existing businesses, assisting in their expansion, and attracting new investment.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**
- The Plan supports National policies such as the NSDP, the New Growth Path and the NDP.

**Proposals**
- No proposals made that are of specific relevance to the Draft LSM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE / CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**MERAFONG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY**

Table 121: Merafong Regional SDF 2012 Review

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
<th>2012.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:**

- The aim of the SDF is to achieve the desired spatial form of the municipality. This form is based on:
  - The development vision of the municipality;
  - The principles of the Development Facilitation Act;
  - Other relevant government legislation;
  - Available resources; and
  - The economic, social and environmental context of the municipality (p. 4).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

### Principle/Policy

- The key strategies summarize the approach that is needed to develop the district area and are as follows:
  - Managing the growth of the district;
  - Urban edge;
  - Infrastructure provision and management;
  - Managing suburban and rural development;
  - Developing quality place;
  - Activity centres and nodes;
  - Sustainable neighbourhoods and housing;
  - Promoting and managing regional and local accessibility;
  - Road linkages;
  - Public transport;
  - Pedestrians; and
  - Providing and managing environmental areas and an open space network (p. 11).

**Proposals**

- The Merafong SDF focuses on the western part of the Potential Development Typology Zone 6, the area to the south of Carletonville.
- Problems identified: Agricultural practice (cultivated land, grazing); Mining and industrial development; Informal settlement; Poaching and plant harvesting (for medicinal and food purposes); Uncontrolled veld fires; Wetland destruction (including peat mining); Water pollution due to mining, industry, inadequate sewage management, agriculture and waste disposal; Flooding (inadequate storm water management, erosion due to unstable soil structures and underlying geology, retention feature failure, urbanisation and the increased need for roads); and Alien vegetation invasion; Inappropriate land-use planning where development has been allowed to take place in close proximity to sensitive environments.
- Rural health (p. 80): Diseases of poverty, such as infectious diseases and maternal and infant illness and mortality are all too common in the rural areas. A high number of rural children die of easily preventable illnesses. All of these conditions could have been eliminated if proper health services had been provided in the past. The target throughout the country is to have one clinic for every 5 000 people, offering free primary health care and ensuring that essential drugs are available at each facility. These clinics have to be located at rural Service Delivery Centres and will be supplemented by mobile units serving sparsely populated rural areas. The design standards of these facilities must conform to the standards set out in the CSIR Human Settlement Planning and Design Guide, 2000.
- In order for agricultural production and secondary processing to occur in an integrated manner it is essential to promote the development of an Agricultural Beneficiation Network (The Merafong Agricultural Beneficiation network [MABN]) that maximizes coordination and beneficiation opportunities. Such a system will attempt to coordinate the efforts of different role players in agriculture, manufacturing, logistics, trade and services in order to increase production and improve value addition of agricultural products produced in Merafong before they are exported to other regions.
and countries (p. 64). This system consists of four main components namely: agricultural production, agri-wholesale and logistics, agro-processing and agri-support industries and encompasses all aspects of agricultural economic processes from start to finish.

- **Agricultural production:** This component is the base upon which the entire system is built and supply security is of critical importance to ensure the sustainability of the higher order functions in the network.
- **Agri-wholesale and logistics:** This component deals with the transport, storage, packaging, grading, marketing, and distribution of raw un-processed and industrially processed agricultural products. This requires the establishment of an aggregation centre, logistics facility and market place.
- **Agro-industrial processing:** Raw products are processed into a variety of consumer goods and value is added in the process. An agro-industrial park would help to create the right environment for agro-processing businesses to flourish.
- **Agri-support industries:** This component is made up of a variety of trade and service activities that support farmers and any other role players in the system for example the retail of agri-inputs, veterinarians, business and financial services, the selling and servicing of equipment, etc. These activities could be incorporated into a commercial and office park with some industrial service activities settling in the industrial park (pp. 64 -65).
- **Worldwide studies have shown that small scale farming is vastly more productive in terms of the output per hectare and jobs created per hectare. Farmers should be supported in the following ways (p. 66):
  - The development of infrastructure associated with agriculture such as roads; railways and loading facilities; public private partnerships in irrigation systems and electricity including alternative sources and Information and Communication Technology (ICT);
  - Limited financial backing could be considered;
  - Information assistance;
  - The development of trading markets;
  - The development of agricultural hubs; and
  - Training.

- **The rural areas of Merafong have in recent times seen a lot of economic and social decay, mostly as a result of flawed policies of the past and uncertainty about the future. In addition to this, there are many squatters in rural areas. These squatters are mining employees as well as prospective and former employees, many of them foreigners. The agricultural sector is currently in decline despite the enormous potential that exists within this sector. Rural development is of paramount importance for Merafong since it will form one of the pillars upon which a sustainable post-mining economy will be built. Merafong municipality is currently conducting a socio-economic survey of the rural areas within the municipal boundaries to determine the needs of the rural population as well as the areas of social and economic potential and obstacles to unlocking potential. It has not yet been completed. Therefore this document will not make any specific recommendations with regard to rural development until the picture becomes clearer (p. 75).

- **Land reform:** The overwhelming majority of potential small scale farmers in Merafong do not have access to land for farming. This should be addressed by purchasing viable land for leasing and through the development of agri-hubs and commonage farming (p. 77).

- **Agrarian transformation:** Rural development in Merafong will be based on the development of a vibrant agrarian production sector that includes the following:
  - Increased production which includes optimal and sustainable use of natural resources including land, grass, trees, water, etc.
  - Livestock farming with the associated beneficiation activities;
  - Cropping with the associated beneficiation activities;
  - The establishment and strengthening of rural livelihoods for vibrant LED; and
  - The use of appropriate technologies, modern approaches and knowledge Systems (p. 78).

- **Merafong City is responsible for protecting environmentally sensitive areas within the Municipal Area from exploitation and damage due to direct or indirect urban development. The primary environmental elements that need to be protected are mountains, ridges and waters courses. This responsibility is shared with other government institutions, especially where proclaimed nature reserves and dams are concerned. The natural landscape of Merafong City is primarily defined by topographical features, water courses and protected areas (p. 84).

- **According to the Agricultural Research Council, Merafong City lies within a moister availability class that is conducive to rain fed arable agriculture. The eastern half of the municipal area has a higher moisture availability than the western half of the Municipal area and is therefore more suitable for rain-fed arable agriculture than the western half. Agriculture is one of the primary economic sectors of Merafong City.”
Although mining is a far greater contributor to the region’s GGP, agriculture is the dominant land use within the Municipal Area in terms of land covered. Two distinct agricultural land use types can be identified: intensive agriculture and extensive agriculture. Intensive Agriculture is the more economic active agricultural sector and normally involves high produce, irrigation farming. Three intensive agriculture areas can be identified within the Municipal Area. The first is located south of the N12, in the Losberg region. Fochville largely serves as a rural centre for the communities living on these farms. The second intensive agriculture area flanks the N12, near the Klipdrif Dam. The third intensive agriculture area is located north and south of the N14. The agricultural region is served by the De Pan rural node. Extensive Agriculture is primarily found in the western half of the Municipal Area, north and south of the mining belt. The reason for this can most probably be contributed to the fact that the western half of the Municipal Area has lower moisture availability than the eastern half. The development of agricultural resources is discussed in greater detail in the rural development and sustainable economic diversification sections (p. 85).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE / CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>NEUTRAL</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>NEUTRAL</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- SDF no real specific detail of agri-related developments and rural development.
- Need for SDF to be amended to include more detail resulting from the RDLR project.
- Take note of problems related to agricultural development in the Merafong area as listed above.
- The three primary intensive agriculture areas identified within the Municipal Area, viz. the area south of the N12, in the Losberg region; the Fochville area, the area near the Klipdrif Dam, and the area located north and south of the N14 (mainly the western half of the Municipal Area, north and south of the mining belt) conforms with the Small-Scale Agri-Based Rural Development Sub Zone identified in the Potential Development Typology Map (Zone 6).

**Table 122: Merafong Annual Report 2011 – 2012**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• 2012</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**

- The Merafong Annual Report 2011 – 2012 provides an overview of the municipal performance and income and expenditure as well as a broad break down of projects in the municipal area.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

**Principle/Policy**

- Good governance, spatial rationale, basic service delivery and public participation.

**Proposals**

- Focus is on: Development of agricultural sector; LED; and food security.
- Merafong City local Municipality supports small scale farmers through agricultural development programmes, which include access to land, training and capacity building as well as equipment and necessities. Land has been identified to accommodate Youth farming cooperatives that have been trained by Gold Fields on urban agriculture. In support of the National food security programme Council has established food gardens in conjunction with NGO’s, schools and community structures (p. 68).
- Agriculture, Forestry and Fishing: There is a slight decrease in the performance of this sector and this sector is the economic growth advantage as described in the Merafong Growth and Development Strategy (GDS). The municipality has to look at opportunities as identified in the GDS and land should be requested from the mines. Negotiations with Corobrick have been started for land donation (p. 69).
- Sanitation in rural areas one of five largest projects (p. 119).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE / CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>NEUTRAL</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td>NEUTRAL</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- No specific actions to be taken.
Table 123: MerafonG GDS 2010

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2010.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:**
- The MerafonG GDS has its focus the formulation of a strategic framework to guide future development within the municipal area.
- It strongly draws on and interfaces with other plans and strategies.
- See western part of Zone 6.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principles/Policy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supports national policies such as ASGISA, NSDP, Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy (ISRDS), CRDP, Gauteng Growth and Development Strategy, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Proposals**
- Focuses on: Development of agricultural sector; LED; food security and agro processing.
- Note strong focus on mining and effect on rural development.
- Vision relating to the agricultural sector: p. 123: To expand the agricultural sector of MerafonG into new markets, specifically niche and export markets. This is one of the main thrusts (Thrust 1).
- Focus areas: Diversifying into new crops/products with focus on practices suitable for small-scale farming.
- Linking struggling agricultural projects with more successful ones.
- Projects: horticulture, floriculture, aquaculture, organic farming, production of inputs in agricultural sector such as seeds, fertilizers and implements, production of animal feeds, marketing and delivery of local agricultural produce to markets (p. 123).
- Skills development.
- Protection of urban edge and strong rural development beyond the urban edge.

| SUMMARY |
| SUPPORT | NEUTRAL | OPPOSE/CONTEST |
| Principle/Policy | XXXXX | |
| Proposals | XXXXX | |

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**
- Take note of projects and implementation strategies in GDS for future phases of the RDLR project.
- To expand the agricultural sector of MerafonG into new markets, specifically niche and export markets, see western part of Zone 6.
- Projects: horticulture, floriculture, aquaculture, organic farming, production of inputs in agricultural sector such as seeds, fertilizers and implements, production of animal feeds, marketing and delivery of local agricultural produce to markets (p. 123).

Table 124: Merafon IDP 2012/2013

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2012.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT**
- The IDP serves as a single broad strategic guide of the broader community and residents of MCLM priority issues that government should implement in this term of Council.
- It also assists administration to prepare a medium term finance framework and annual budget that seek to allocate resources to address all these needs.
- In reviewing the five-year IDP plan, it is important to be mindful of alignment with all spheres of government i.e. National, Provincial and Local Government and also to ensure that there is a clear link between the strategic objectives agreed with the community, the IDP, the budget, SDBIP. The IDP is the delivery plan of the entire government plan (p. 1).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Community participation, equity, sustainability, spatial justice, economic development.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supports national policies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Proposals

- Agriculture Trends p.18: Decreasing productivity in the agricultural sector over the past decade. There was however a sharp increase in productivity over the last year. The decreasing trend in employment in agricultural sector is hampering the expansion of the sector. However, Merafong contains high potential agricultural areas with potential for more intensive agricultural production (e.g. areas adjacent to dolomite aquifers). Need for increased productivity, crop diversification and value adding activities (e.g. agro processing). Most agricultural activities are labour intensive and should be invested in to address the employment rate.
- Mining, most important sector – impact on rural and employment.
- Also includes reference to Disaster Risk Management plan, Integrated Transport Plan, Water Plan, other sector plans and the SDF (except for SDF) no direct relevance in these plans detected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle/Policy</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE

- Take note of projects and implementation strategies in IDP for future phases of the RDLR project.
- IDP does not address rural areas in detail and this should be expanded.
- IDP places too much focus on municipal/institutional and corporate issues in metro.
- Focus of IDP too much on infrastructure projects in wards, e.g. road surfacing, etc.
- Very few projects in rural areas and these projects are also very detailed and infrastructure in nature.
- Need for increased productivity, crop diversification and value adding activities (e.g. agro processing) in Merafong region.

MOGALE CITY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

Table 125: Mogale City IDP 2011 -2016

YEAR AND STATUS

- 2011 -2016

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:

- The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) is an instrument that enables all spheres of government to plan in an encompassing manner. The drafting and approval process of the IDP is legislated and time bound as it guides the all annual budgets of Mogale City Local Municipality (MCLM).
- The IDP serves as a single broad strategic guide of the broader community and residents of MCLM priority issues that government should implement in this term of Council. It also assists administration to prepare a medium term finance framework and annual budget that seek to allocate resources to address all these needs (p. 1).
- The IDP is not only a local government programme, but the delivery plan of entire government in a particular space. In this case, this 5 year IDP should be seen a government plan, not only of MCLM (p.1).
- MCLM is a city municipal area that incorporates previously racial divided black and white municipal authorities of Kagiso, Munsieville and Krugersdorp. MCLM otherwise known as the City of Human Origin is home to the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site (p. 5).
- Mogale City is situated at the Western side of the Gauteng Province. It also forms part of the broader West Rand District Municipality, which consist of four local municipalities, i.e. Randfontein, Westonaria, Mogale City and Merafong City. Mogale City is made up of the following areas: Kagiso & Rietvallei 1,2 & 3; Azaadville; Krugersdorp and surrounding areas; Munsieville; Muldersdrift; Tarlton; Magaliesburg; and Hekpoort (p. 6).
- The IDP addresses the northern part of Zone 9 and the southern part of Zone 8.

IMPLIED CONSEQUENCES FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

Principle/Policy

- The strategic objectives intend to set programme in motion for the five- year IDP programme. The Strategic objectives outlined service delivery and infrastructure development, human Settlements, local economic development, Social Services, rural development and environmental sustainability (p.41).
The main development principles of local economic growth can be outlined as follows (p. 118):

- Beneficiation of primary products;
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Historically, the Agricultural sector is Mogale City’s weakest sector. The majority of agricultural activities occur in the south-western region of Mogale City, towards the south and west of the R24. This portion of active farmland forms part of the Gauteng Agricultural Hub, which consist of six separate agricultural hubs found throughout the province. These agricultural hubs were established in order to create focal points of high quality agricultural activity, where niche market agricultural products are farmed. Mogale City predominantly offers the following products: fruit orchards and vegetables; flower farms that produce a good percentage of the flowers required in Gauteng; instant lawn growers; and animal farming, including chicken farms (p. 77).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture in Mogale City has experience continual downturn in terms of growth and the sectoral contribution towards the GDP of the area. The total GVA contribution by the Agricultural sector has decreased from 1.5% in 2003 to 0.5% in 2008, a diminishing average growth rate of -13.6% spanning five years. It is clear that Livestock, Poultry and Game products (60.65%) are the largest contributors towards the total Agricultural GVA of Mogale City. Horticulture also contributes a significant amount (38.01%), whilst Field crops are least productive sub-sector (0.92%). The agriculture sector incorporates establishments and activities that are primarily engaged in farming activities, but also includes establishments focusing on commercial hunting and game propagation and forestry, logging and fishing. The Majority of crops are cultivated and wild flowers as well as vegetables. These are the largest contributors to the crop production of Mogale City. It is clear that poultry products and poultry are the largest contributor of livestock production in Mogale City contributing over 90% of livestock production (p. 77-78).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrust 1: Development of an Agricultural Hub (p. 119). The objective of this Thrust is to build on the existing primary sector activities that occur within Mogale City Local Municipality through the extension of the agricultural value chain. In Mogale City, the primary sector activities relate to agricultural activities, focussed mainly on floriculture, pig and chicken farming as well as the production of vegetables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The agricultural sector in Mogale City allows opportunities for further beneficiation and the extension of value-adding activities related to these products. Currently, there are very little processing activities taking place within the region. The large amount of cattle and chicken farmers as well as the location of some vegetable and fruit farms makes it an ideal location for chicken and/or vegetable processing activities in the area (p. 119).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are some small-scale and subsistence farmers within Mogale City, particularly in the rural areas, who are not producing at optimal levels, due to a number of constraining factors. Many agricultural projects are also struggling to survive and some have become in-active. It is, therefore, also important that emerging farmers and existing agricultural projects are supported in expanding their farming activities into viable and sustainable enterprises that will not only increase the income generated and jobs created by these activities, but will also grow sufficiently to form the basis of further beneficiation opportunities (p. 119).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The agriculture sector incorporates establishments and activities that are primarily engaged in farming activities, but also includes establishments focusing on commercial hunting and game propagation and forestry, logging and fishing (p. 74).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also opportunities for farming and export of essential oils and cosmetic oils as a prosed new agri-industry in the region (see p. 78-80).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also agricultural opportunities for emerging farmers in the area (p. 80).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also value chain opportunities (p. 81): Agro processing industries such as leather tanning, meat processing, grain milling and product packaging; agro based tourism where tourists can visit area to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
experience “farm life”; and essential services for agriculture, including financial and insurance, veterinarian services, transportation, marketing and security services.

- See also Tarlton agricultural node: the huge agricultural potential in Tarlton needs to be explored further as it is envisaged that Tarlton be regarded as an Agricultural hub with packaging, storage and market facilities.

- See also Agriculture is seen as one of the most viable sectors for stimulating growth and development within the Mogale City economy. Based on the above information and analysis, Table 5.4 in the LED report (p. 84) portrays the development potential that could stimulate economic growth and development in the area.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| - Take note of projects and implementation strategies in LED strategy for future phases of the RDLR project. |
| - This LED very strong on rural development and can contribute much to the development of a rural development strategy for province and for WRDM. |
| - Tarlton agricultural node: the huge agricultural potential in Tarlton need to be explored further as it is envisaged that Tarlton be regarded as an Agricultural hub with packaging, storage and market facilities. |
| - See also Mogale City Rural Development Strategy and related template – (Ref: WRDM 7) |

Table 127: Mogale City Rural Development Strategy

| YEAR AND STATUS                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| - No date provided on plan.                                                     |         |
| - It seems that the plan was drafted in 2010 as it is stated that this plan was “a follow up on the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP) in 2009 by the Ministry of Rural Development and subsequently the establishment of the Council of Stakeholders in 2010 at both national and local level” (p. 1). |         |

| DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| - The Mogale City Rural Development Strategy, aims to direct growth and development and specifically rural development in the region. |         |
| - The nature of settlements in MCLM is sporadic outside Krugersdorp (main urban area) and the rural economy is mainly driven by agriculture and tourism. Rural Land use areas identified: Rietfontein, Driefontein & Van Wyks Restante; Oaktree, Protea Ridge, and Game Reserve; Honingkloof, Heuningkip and Steynsvlei; Tarlton; Magaliesburg; Hekpoort, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai; Rhenosterspruit, Lindrey & Nootgedacht (pp. 2 and 3). |         |
| - The document emphasises the need for a comprehensive rural development strategy and an implementation plan for MCLM to follow on the recent provincial rural development strategy developed by the Gauteng Department of Agriculture and Rural Development (GDARD). |         |

| IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Principle/Policy                                                                 |
| - The following principles are key anchors to this CRDS strategy (p. 4):         |         |
|   o The MCLM’s role is to create a business environment for rural development and to work with rural communities to support locally developed initiatives, programs, plans and projects; |         |
|   o All rural communities should have access to a minimum level of basic services; |         |
|   o Each member of the community should show good stewardship where land, water and other resources are responsibly consumed; |         |
|   o Action must be initiated and developed at rural wards to build strong and sustainable enterprises managed by locals. There is a need for communal ownership of projects; |         |
|   o The key focus must be on educating and building the skills base of the communities so that they can effectively participate in the economy; and |         |
|   o Sustainable cooperatives and mentorship models should be implemented in order to drive economic empowerment programmes and bulk infrastructure issues. |         |
| - Strategy has strong focus on: access to services and opportunities and infrastructure in these rural |         |
• Some of the key challenges in the rural wards that were confirmed by the CRDS study include the following (p. 3):
  o A notable degree of disintegration in the Mogale City community along racial lines and political affiliation;
  o There is a dire need for a shared vision on rural development so that all communities play a part in poverty alleviation initiatives / programs;
  o There is a shortage of land for economic and empowerment programmes as well as human settlements;
  o A shortage of skilled and educated youth to drive rural development programs.
  o There is a backlog on the provision of bulk infrastructure, public, sporting and recreational facilities in most rural wards of Mogale City;
  o The apparent reluctance or inability of residents to pay for basic services rendered is impacting negatively on the Municipality’s revenue base.

• Strategic objectives (p. 24-32):
  o Provide tap water to all formal settlements;
  o Ensure that there is sufficient water to support economic development programmes;
  o Ensure that residents and their livestock are safe from the Acid Mine Drainage challenge;
  o Provide residents with access to garbage/waste collections in all formal settlements and in the most densely populated informal settlements;
  o Minimise or eliminate river/stream and ground water contamination;
  o Ensure that all formalized settlements have access to electricity and other forms of energy such as solar and gas;
  o Ensure that there is adequate electricity for socio-economic projects identified as part of the CRDS or other planning exercises in the Municipality (e.g. IDP, LED, etc.);
  o Work with utility providers to ensure that citizens pay for services;
  o Promote the use of renewable energy sources where communities and households can receive assistance to mount solar panels on their houses to supplement their electricity;
  o Prioritize the provision of roads and a public transport system in all settlements;
  o Provide suitable road access and public transport to improve safety in rural settlements;
  o Provide the full suite of services to rural residents of Mogale City through the provision of value adding public and recreational facilities;
  o Attract private sector funding to assist in the provision of public and recreational facilities for the rural settlements in Mogale City;
  o Ensure grassroots development of art and sport in the rural settlements of Mogale City;
  o Provide the best possible education facilities and learning aids that will reduce the cost of education while improving learning opportunities in Mogale City;
  o Increase access to both primary and secondary education in all rural wards of Mogale City;
  o Encourage good teachers to work in and develop their careers in the rural wards of Mogale City;
  o Make it possible to attract best possible teachers to develop their career in the rural wards of Mogale City;
  o Ensure that people in rural wards have access to quality primary health care services closer to home;
  o Provide for emergency services to ensure that Mogale City treats special cases in the rural wards;
  o To significantly reduce crime in Mogale City;
  o Use the low rates of crime in the rural wards to attract critical skills and private sector investments into Mogale City;
  o Build on the traditional economic strengths of agriculture, tourism, and manufacturing in the rural wards of Mogale City;
  o Expand innovative and value-adding business opportunities;
  o Develop the green economy;
  o Increase the diversity of employment opportunities as a thrust to sustainable economic development.
  o Improve the availability of highly skilled and trained entrepreneurs through capacity building programmes (i.e. especially the youth);
  o Increase opportunities and support for youth in the rural wards of Mogale City to obtain post-
secondary education qualifications;
  o Provide programs and services to help rural wards of Mogale City to manage their careers and adapt their skills to meet the ever-changing needs of the market and that of their communities; and
  o Improve access to apprenticeships, learnerships and training in rural communities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION / PROJECT RESPONSE**

- This strategy document is very relevant and supportive of rural development.
- See strategies in document for follow-up phases and implementation (p. 25).
- See projects recommended for Tartlon and Magaliesburg, Hekpoort (p. 34-35).
- See funding strategy for future phases (p. 38).

---

### Table 128: Mogale City Turnaround Strategy (2010)

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- 2010

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:**

- Institutional reform strategy for local authority – no direct relevance for DRDLR project.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**

- **Principle/Policy**
  - No specific principle statements relevant to the project are made.

- **Proposals**
  - No specific proposals relevant to the project are made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION / PROJECT RESPONSE**

- No specific relevance.
- Focuses mostly on institutional aspects.

---

### Table 129: Mogale City SDF 2009

**YEAR AND STATUS**

- December 2009.

**DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:**

- The aim of the SDF is to ensure sustainable urban and rural environment while at the same time creating an enabling environment for the implementation of the developmental agenda of national government (p. 1);
- The Spatial Development Framework is structured around the following sections (p. 1):
  - Institutional context and directives for spatial development;
  - The Municipal area in context;
  - Objectives of the SDF;
  - The Spatial Development Concept; and
  - Implementation.
- Mogale City lies directly west and south of the Johannesburg and Tshwane metropolitan areas respectively, and forms part of one of three district municipalities that make up the peripheral areas of Gauteng province. To the north, west and south it borders onto Madibeng Local Municipality, Rustenburg Local Municipality and Randfontein Local Municipality respectively. The West Rand District Management Area lies within the central-northern part of Mogale City, and this area comprises the bulk of the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage site (p. 33).

**IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS**
**Principle/Policy**

- The spatial development objectives for Mogale City are informed by the legislative and policy framework as well as the contextual analysis of Mogale City itself. The objectives are (p. 3):
  - The integration of various areas in Mogale City to form a cohesive, well-functioning space economy;
  - The development of sustainable human settlements and urban renewal of existing settlements;
  - The promotion and facilitation of economic development;
  - The sustainable management of the natural environmental assets and heritage;
  - The promotion of tourism development;
  - The promotion of sustainable rural development;
  - The development and improvement of linkages with Johannesburg, Tshwane, Madibeng, the rest of Gauteng and the broader region; and
  - Service delivery, specifically focusing on providing sufficient capacity in development priority areas.

**Proposals**

- The spatial structuring elements that are addressed in the spatial development concept are (p. 3 – 4):
  - Natural Structuring Elements;
  - Growth Management;
  - Urban Edge;
  - Supporting strategies for growth management;
  - Urban Areas;
  - Activity network;
  - Activity nodes;
  - Activity spines;
  - N14/R28 Development Corridor;
  - Lanseria Aerotropolis;
  - Specialised Activity Areas;
  - Densification;
  - Residential settlements;
  - Future of mining land adjacent to urban areas;
  - Urban Open Space System;
  - Rural Areas;
  - Rural Development;
  - High Potential Agricultural Land;
  - Muldersdrift rural transition zone and the CoH Buffer Zone;
  - Rural Service Centres;
  - Rural housing development;
  - Tourism;
  - The movement system;
  - Cultural heritage; and
  - City Image and Public Spaces.

- Strong focus on the protection of valuable agricultural land, the protection of pristine and valuable natural environments and the promotion of rural based tourism which is one of Mogale City’s main competitive advantages (p. 3-4).

- The spatial development concept sets out principles for the protection and promotion of cultural heritage (p. 5).

- The spatial structure of Mogale City is made up of four major development/use zones, namely (P. 34):
  - The extensive rural environment;
  - The urban area;
  - Muldersdrift rural/urban transition zone and future development area; and
  - The Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site and Buffer Zone.

- Main objective (p. 3): The promotion of sustainable rural development.

- The Gauteng Department of Agriculture, Conservation and Environment has demarcated a number of agricultural hubs throughout the province. These hubs relate to the creation of centres of high quality agricultural activity, where niche market agricultural products such as vegetables, including indigenous vegetables, flowers, herbs and spices will be farmed. The south-western part of Mogale City, roughly to the south and west of the R24, forms part of one such a hub.

- The Gauteng Agricultural Hub lies in the south-western part of Mogale City, roughly to the south and...
The rural environment is characterised by the following prominent features:

- The Magaliesberg and Witwatersberg ranges in the north-western part of Mogale City;
- Concentration of moderate to high potential agricultural land in the north-western and south-western part of Mogale City, the latter forming part of a Gauteng Agricultural Hub;
- Nature conservation areas such as the Krugersdorp Game Reserve, Magaliesrivier Conservancy, Hartebeesfontein Conservancy and Lammermoor Conservancy; and
- Rural towns in Mogale City are Tarlton, Magaliesburg, and Hekpoort, located in the western part of Mogale City. These are generally small settlements that are in essence no more than rural service centres providing a central place service to the surrounding rural and farming communities.

- See location of Lanseria airport development node and opportunities associated with this in terms of export. Some of the potential land uses envisaged in this area includes tourism facilities such as hotels and visitors centres, warehousing, commercial uses (including small scale storage facilities) and industries related to aviation as well as a measure of high density residential development.

- Strong focus on urban edge: Containment of urban sprawl; Intensification of development; Integration of urban areas; Protection of valuable agricultural, natural and cultural resources; The optimum use of existing resources in established urban areas, such as bulk service infrastructure, roads and public facilities; and reducing the need for commuting as well as commuting distances.

- Pp. 112 – 115: Rural areas are defined as “the sparsely populated areas in which people farm or depend on natural resources, including the villages and small towns that are dispersed through these areas. In addition, they include the large settlements in the former homelands, created by the apartheid removals, which depend for their survival on migratory labour and remittances.” As shown in the contextual analysis, the largest part of Mogale City comprises a rural environment. The spatial development framework must therefore focus on how to enhance and support appropriate rural development in the area. The rural environment in Mogale City is essentially made up of the following four elements: Agriculture; Natural open spaces and conservation areas; Rural service centres and towns; and Tourism.

- The rural environment should be protected from development that is not in line with the rural character of the area. The most important principle that applies is that development should be restricted and that the rural character should be maintained. These areas are typically removed from major nodes or activity areas with little chance of functional integration with the main urban economy, which means that any inappropriate development in these areas will contribute to an inefficient spatial form and functionality. Any uses that would normally occur in urban or suburban areas should not be approved outside the urban edge.

- See principles that that should be applied when evaluating applications for developments outside the urban edge (p. 112-115).

- Rural Service Centres, p. 115: Mogale City comprises three rural service centres, namely Tarlton, Magaliesburg and Hekpoort, of which Magaliesburg is most developed. The main purpose of these rural service centres is to act as central places in the rural environment where basic day-to-day services are delivered to the rural communities. The types of services that could be found in these centres include: Municipal satellite offices; Social and Support Services; Small scale (convenience) retail; Tourism facilities and services; Transportation services; It is also possible for these towns to have unique characteristics or identities that make them attractive for certain types of development. Magaliesburg has for example long been known as a tourism destination, and many uses related to the tourism industry have developed in this area.

- See Tourism potential of the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site and its Buffer Zone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE**

- Strong focus on rural areas with reference to: Rural Development; High Potential Agricultural Land; Muldersdrift rural transition zone; Rural Service Centres; Rural housing development and Tourism;
RANDFONTEIN LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

Table 130: Randfontein IDP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YEAR AND STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• IDP 2011-2016.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Approval date unknown.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION OF DOCUMENT:

• The Integrated Development Plan translates the long-term Strategy for Randfontein Local Municipality – and in so doing shows how we will implement Randfontein’s future development. The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) and the associated Annual Performance Plans and Budgets, as stipulated in the Municipal Systems Act (MSA) and the Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA), contain the detailed Operational Planning of Service Delivery, by Department, for the financial year ahead (p. 7).
• These plans are directed by and anchored in the Long-Term Development Strategy. This ensures that the Municipality delivers services in line with the Political and Community ambitions and makes sure that the correct overarching decisions that relate to accelerated economic growth and human development take place (p. 3).

IMPLICATIONS FOR LAND SUITABILITY ANALYSIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principles/Policy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• This Plan is informed by National and Provincial Government Priorities, Political Priorities, Emerging Trends and Community-Related Issues (p. 7);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The Development Vision for Randfontein, 2011 – 2016, is as follows (p. 33): “Randfontein will be:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o A home to a skilled and healthy populations;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o A vibrant economic landscape offering new opportunities to all;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o A place where public confidence in a shared, bright future is high;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o An appealing and coherent tourism and leisure experience; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o An attractive and well-used natural, historic and built environment.”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• There are five Development Goals (p. 34), namely:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o A Skilled and Healthy Population in Randfontein;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o A Vibrant Economy which offers New Opportunities;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Public Confidence in a Shared, Bright Future for Randfontein;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o An Appealing Tourism and Leisure Experience; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o An Attractive, Well-Used Natural, Historic and Built Environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The Tourism and Leisure Sector will play a significant role in the economic prosperity of the area. People will spend increasingly longer periods of time in the area and enjoy a memorable experience (p. 41).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Only mentions process agricultural development in general in project section of report, and only relevant projects relating to LED section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Mention made to establishment of food production units at Elandsfontein (R 1 700 000); establish vegetable production and nursery business at Badirile (R 1 000 000); and host farmers day and agricultural expo (R100 000).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY</th>
<th>SUPPORT</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
<th>OPPOSE/CONTEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle/Policy</td>
<td>XXXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposals</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUMMARY: PROPOSED ACTION/PROJECT RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Take note of projects and implementation strategies in IDP for future phases of the RDLR project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• IDP silent on rural issues.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>